Rossby and Drift Wave Turbulence and Zonal Flows: the Charney-Hasegawa-Mima model and its extensions

Colm Connaughton^{a,b,c,d}, Sergey Nazarenko^{a,e}, Brenda Quinn^{a,f}

^aMathematics Institute, University of Warwick, Gibbet Hill Road, Coventry CV4 7AL, United Kingdom

^bCentre for Complexity Science, University of Warwick, Gibbet Hill Road, Coventry CV4 7AL, United Kingdom

^cOkinawa Institute of Science and Technology Graduate University, 1919-1 Tancha Onna-son, Okinawa 904-0495, Japan

^dKavli Institute for Theoretical Physics, Kohn Hall, University of California Santa Barbara, CA 93106, United States

^eLaboratoire SPHYNX, Service de Physique de l'Etat Condense, DSM, IRAMIS, CEA, Saclay, CNRS URA 2464, 91191, Gif-sur-Yvette, France

^fSchool of Mechanical Engineering, Tel-Aviv University, Israel

Abstract

A detailed study of the Charney-Hasegawa-Mima model and its extensions is presented. These simple nonlinear partial differential equations suggested for both Rossby waves in the atmosphere and drift waves in a magnetically-confined plasma, exhibit some remarkable and nontrivial properties, which in their qualitative form, survive in more realistic and complicated models. As such, they form a conceptual basis for understanding the turbulence and zonal flow dynamics in real plasma and geophysical systems. Two idealized scenarios of generation of zonal flows by small-scale turbulence are explored: a modulational instability and turbulent cascades. A detailed study of the generation of zonal flows by the modulational instability reveals that the dynamics of this zonal flow generation mechanism differ widely depending on the initial degree of nonlinearity. The jets in the strongly nonlinear case further roll up into vortex streets and saturate, while for the weaker nonlinearities, the growth of the unstable mode reverses and the system oscillates between a dominant jet, which is slightly inclined to the zonal direction, and a dominant primary wave. A numerical proof is provided for the extra invariant in Rossby and drift wave turbulence – *zonostrophy*. While the theoretical derivations of this invariant stem from the wave kinetic equation which assumes weak wave amplitudes, it is shown to be relatively well-conserved for higher nonlinearities also. Together with the energy and enstrophy, these three invariants cascade into anisotropic sectors in the k -space as predicted by the Fjørtoft argument. The cascades are characterised by the *zonostrophy* pushing the energy to the zonal scales. A small scale instability forcing applied to the model has demonstrated the well-known drift wave – zonal flow feedback loop. The drift wave turbulence is generated from this primary instability. The zonal flows are then excited by either one of the generation mechanisms, extracting energy from the drift waves as they grow. Eventually the turbulence is completely suppressed and the zonal flows saturate. The turbulence spectrum is shown to diffuse in a manner which has been mathematically predicted. The insights gained from this simple model could provide a basis for equivalent studies in more sophisticated plasma and geophysical fluid dynamics models in an effort to fully understand the zonal flow generation, the turbulent transport suppression and the zonal flow saturation processes in both the plasma and geophysical contexts as well as other wave and turbulence systems where order evolves from chaos.

© 2011 Published by Elsevier Ltd.

Keywords: Zonal flow, Rossby waves, drift waves, modulational instability, zonostrophy, triple cascade, nonlocal turbulence, instability forcing

Contents

1 Introduction

3

1.1	Wave turbulence	3
1.2	Zonal Flows	4
1.3	Summary of review contents	6
2	The Charney-Hasegawa-Mima equation and related models	7
2.1	The Charney–Hasegawa–Mima equation	7
2.2	Extended Hasegawa-Mima model	10
2.3	Forced-dissipated CHM and EHM models	10
2.4	Hasegawa-Wakatani and extended Hasegawa-Wakatani models	10
3	Wave turbulence theory for the CHM equation	11
3.1	Overview of the application of the wave turbulence framework to the CHM equation	11
3.1.1	The meaning of averaging in wave turbulence and quasi-Gaussianity	12
3.1.2	Non-uniformity of regular perturbation theory for a nonlinear oscillator	13
3.2	The Rossby/drift wave kinetic equation	16
3.2.1	Breakdown of weak wave turbulence	18
3.2.2	Structure of the resonance curves	19
3.3	Anisotropic stationary solutions of the wave kinetic equation: the Kolmogorov-Zakharov spectra	19
3.3.1	Short wave limit	19
3.3.2	Long wave limit	20
3.4	Nonlocality of the Kolmogorov–Zakharov spectra for Rossby/drift waves	22
4	Low dimensional models of spectral energy transfer	24
4.1	Triad-based spectral truncations of the CHM equation	24
4.1.1	Spectral truncation	24
4.1.2	Triad-based truncation	24
4.2	Interplay between resonant manifolds and wavevector quantisation in finite systems	26
4.3	Nonlinear dynamics of resonant triads	28
4.4	Predator-Prey models of wave-zonal flow interaction	31
5	Modulational Instability: linear theory	31
5.1	Linear dynamics of modulations	32
5.2	Cases with purely meridional carrier wave	33
5.3	Cases with purely zonal modulation	33
5.4	Finite ρ effects and EHM	35
5.5	Relationship between modulational instability and zonostrophic instability	36
6	Modulational Instability: nonlinear stage	36
6.1	Initial nonlinear stage: sharpening of jets	37
6.2	Intermediate nonlinear stage: vortex roll-up vs oscillation	37
6.3	Late nonlinear stage: turbulence	39
6.4	Finite deformation radius	39
6.5	EHM	39
6.6	Instability and zonal jets in HW/EHW model	40
6.6.1	Primary instability in the HW/EHW system	41
6.6.2	Secondary instability in the HW system - MI	41
7	Invariants and anisotropic cascades in Rossby and drift wave turbulence	42
7.1	Forms of inverse energy cascade and the role of anisotropy	42
7.1.1	Distinctions between steady and unsteady cascades and different forcing mechanisms	42
7.1.2	Dimensional arguments for steady isotropic inverse cascade spectra for β -plane turbulence	44
7.1.3	Anisotropy, the dumb-bell curve and the inhibition of the inverse cascade by the β -effect	46
7.1.4	Steady anisotropic inverse cascade spectra: the k_y^{-5} spectrum	47

7.2	Discrete and kinetic wave turbulence regimes	48
7.3	Conservation Laws and Cascades in the kinetic wave turbulence	48
7.3.1	Small-scale limit	50
7.3.2	Large-scale limit, $\rho \rightarrow 0$	53
7.4	Discrete WT	54
7.4.1	Small-scale Rossby and drift wave clusters	56
7.4.2	Large-scale Rossby and drift wave clusters	56
8	Wave Turbulence – Zonal Flow feedback loop	56
8.1	Nonlocal evolution of CHM turbulence	57
8.1.1	Nonlocal interaction with large-scale zonal flows	57
8.1.2	Nonlocal interaction with small-scale zonal flows	58
8.2	Qualitative WKB description of zonal flow growth	58
8.2.1	Weak zonal flow	59
8.2.2	Strong zonal flow	60
8.3	Numerical validation of the WT/ZF feedback loop	61
8.3.1	Narrowband forcing	61
8.3.2	Broadband forcing	61
8.4	Feedback loop in HW & EHW models	62
9	Conclusion	63
A	Nonlocal interaction with zonal flows	64
A.1	Nonlocal interaction with large-scale zonal flows	65
A.2	Nonlocal interaction with small-scale zonal flows	67

1. Introduction

1.1. Wave turbulence

The term *wave turbulence* is used to mean the spectral transport of energy or other conserved quantities resulting from mode coupling in an ensemble of nonlinear dispersive waves. It is recognized at the outset that in some sections of the literature, the term turbulence is more narrowly interpreted to mean vortex-vortex interactions in the Navier-Stokes equations and its immediate derivatives. From this point of view, some readers may believe the term wave turbulence to be oxymoronic since waves and vortices are conceptually separate flow structures (even if it is not so obvious how to separate them in practice) and by definition only the latter can exhibit turbulence. Since this review is intended to be of interest to readers from diverse backgrounds, the reader is asked to set aside such questions of terminology and focus on the fact that spectral transport of conserved quantities is physically important in a variety of different systems. Whether this spectral transport occurs due to vortex-vortex interactions, to wave-wave interactions or to a mixture of the two is largely immaterial in the sense that many of the concepts developed to understand vortex turbulence such as Richardson’s notion of an energy cascade, Kolmogorov’s 1941 theory [1] and Kraichnan’s extension [2] to describe the inverse energy cascade in two dimensions are equally applicable to other forms of spectral transport. In particular, a lot is known about cascades mediated by wave-wave interactions, particularly in the limit of weakly nonlinear wave interactions where considerable analytic progress has been made [3, 4]. Another important concept from the hydrodynamic turbulence literature which is very generally applicable and is of crucial importance in much of what follows, is the notion of the *locality* of a cascade. A cascade is said to be local if the properties of the cascade in the inertial range are insensitive to the values of the forcing and dissipation scales provided that they are widely enough separated in scale. Physically it means that the flux at a particular scale is mediated primarily by interactions with comparable scales. It would probably be clearer to refer to this property as *scale-locality* but to follow the convention in the literature it will be referred to here as *locality*. The locality of the energy cascade is an essential ingredient of Kolmogorov’s theory of hydrodynamic turbulence and is frequently discussed although in hydrodynamic turbulence, it is rare to find a situation in which locality fails. In wave turbulence cascades, on the other hand, it is quite common to find physically interesting systems in which the assumption of a local cascade fails.

1.2. Zonal Flows

A zonal flow is a coherent, banded structure with a characteristic jet-like velocity profile which is commonly found in two-dimensional and quasi two-dimensional fluid flows subject to large scale anisotropy. Two particular examples will be introduced. The first is geophysical fluid dynamics (GFD) where quasi-two-dimensionality and anisotropy is the result of the large aspect ratio and imposed rotation of planetary flows. The second is the dynamics of a strongly magnetized plasma where quasi-two-dimensionality and anisotropy are the result of a strong, externally-imposed magnetic field. A majestic example of zonal flows in geophysical fluid dynamics (GFD) are the belts and zones in the atmospheres of Jupiter and Saturn [5, 6, 7, 8]. The latitudinally-aligned bands observed on the giant planets are zonal flows, visible due to the ammonia cloud formations. Far from being solely extra-terrestrial phenomena however, zonal flows also exist near the tropopause in the Earth's atmosphere such as the polar and subtropical jet streams [9] which eastward-bound aircraft take advantage of and in the Earth's oceans [10] such as the Antarctic circumpolar current. Zonal flows are also striking features of plasma flows in strongly magnetized plasmas, particularly in magnetic confinement fusion devices such as tokamaks. In this latter context, they are observed as radially localized, toroidally symmetric, strongly sheared flows in the poloidal direction. The tendency to form zonal flows is one of the key common features which leads to important overlaps between research in GFD and fusion plasma physics.

A second key common feature linking the two problems is the ability of large-scale gradients to support waves. In the GFD context, these waves are called Rossby waves and exist due to the planetary rotation and curvature of the surface that lead to a β -effect and corresponding restoring force. They are named after Carl Gustaf Rossby, who in 1939 [11, 12] used observations of large recurring eddies in the atmosphere over the USA and analysis of data for the Earth's northern hemisphere to determine the velocity of these large-scale flow patterns in the zonal direction. It was found that they propagate westward in the atmosphere with very low frequency. They are characterized by a very long wavelength of the order 10^5 m, an amplitude of 10^1 m and mode number of order five in the Earth's atmosphere and their velocity is proportional to the gradient of the Coriolis force. However they are more difficult to observe in the oceans since they exist in the thermocline where they are characterized by a very long wavelength of the order 5×10^5 m and amplitude of $\sim 5 \times 10^1$ m. These waves and their stability properties are largely responsible for the unpredictable mid-latitude weather systems experienced on Earth due to the creation of cyclones and anticyclones. In plasma physics, there are many types of waves. The waves most closely analogous to Rossby waves are called drift waves and they are supported on large-scale density gradients. They are small, low frequency oscillations which result from the balancing of the parallel and drift dynamics in a neutral magnetically-confined plasma [13]. The electrons with higher energy and velocity contribute most to the dynamics parallel to the magnetic field. In the perpendicular to the magnetic field plane, as they orbit, the ions and electrons are accelerated then decelerated in the direction of the electric field so that there is a slight velocity imbalance between opposite sides of the orbit path, resulting in the particle drifting perpendicular to the electric field – this is so-called $\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}$ drift. Further correction to this drift is due to the ion inertia: it leads to so-called polarization drift. The drift motion combined with the plasma inhomogeneity brings about existence of a wave motion called the drift wave.

In both GFD and plasma physics, the underlying equations of motion contain nonlinearities of the hydrodynamic type. Therefore if waves reach sufficiently high amplitudes, for example due to an instability, they can interact nonlinearly. This leads to wave turbulence and spectral transport of energy via cascades. Drift wave turbulence arises when the drift waves are unstable to steep gradients of the mean plasma profile (e.g. drift-dissipative instability or ion-temperature gradient instability), whereas in the GFD context, waves can be unstable due to barotropic or baroclinic instability. In both the GFD and plasma physics contexts, large-scale, coherent zonal flows are seen to coexist with small-scale, incoherent wave-turbulence fluctuations. It is generally accepted that large-scale zonal flows in tokamaks are actually generated by drift wave turbulence [14] in the sense that they grow by nonlinear energy transfer from wave turbulence in the core of the plasma. They can suck the energy from the drift wave packets as they grow and reduce the level of drift wave turbulence in the process. Zonal flows are therefore the result of self-organization of a turbulent state to a coherent flow. A similar mechanism may have been responsible for the generation of the zonal flows seen in planetary oceans and atmospheres. Understanding the generation and maintenance of zonal flows and the interplay between zonal flows and wave turbulence is therefore key to understanding the dynamics of both the atmospheres and of magnetically-confined plasmas, in particular the spectral energy transfer in these systems. There is strong evidence to suggest that this transfer is largely nonlocal in nature [15, 16, 14, 17, 18, 4].

The main reason why there is currently a large amount of practical scientific interest in the topic of turbulence-zonal flow interactions is the fact that the interplay between incoherent turbulence and coherent zonal flows alluded to

above, links the spectral and spatial transport properties of the flow. Small-scale turbulence is well known to enhance spatial transport, a process often referred to as eddy-diffusion. Zonal flows, on the other hand, are believed to act as spatial transport barriers. Transport barriers are coherent flow structures such as vortices or jets, usually large scale, which act to reduce the spatial transport associated with eddy diffusion. They are not barriers in the literal sense of the word since usually they act only to reduce transport, rather than to eliminate it entirely. Zonal flows are believed to reduce transport because it is difficult to diffuse in the direction perpendicular to a zonal flow. Therefore, if energy is transferred spectrally from small-scale turbulence to large-scale zonal flows, via a turbulent inverse cascade for example, spatial transport is expected to be reduced through reduced eddy diffusion and vice versa. The degree to which transport is reduced perpendicular to a given zonal flow is not fully understood however and questions related to the parametrisation and control of spatial transport lie at the heart of several key contemporary problems in both GFD and plasma physics which are now summarised briefly here for the purposes of motivation.

In fusion plasmas, the primary of these contemporary problems is that of plasma confinement. Achieving plasma ignition requires a sufficiently high plasma density, temperature and confinement time being achieved simultaneously before the plasma loses its energy. The minimum value of the product of these three quantities provides a revised version of the Lawson criterion [19], which must be met for sustained confinement [20]. Although construction of ITER, the next step in fusion research, is already under way in Cadarache, France, there are still some underlying fundamental issues which need to be resolved for successful ignition to occur. One of those issues is related to spatial transport. Early experiments established that the transport of plasma from the hot core to the edge region in a tokamak is much greater than can be explained by classical collisional or neoclassical trapped particle theory [20]. This so-called anomalous transport greatly reduced the confinement time and initially baffled engineers and scientists. The origin of anomalous transport was traced to small scale turbulence, primarily drift wave turbulence resulting from small scale instabilities. Fresh impetus was given to fusion research however when it was discovered experimentally [21] in the Axially Symmetric Divertor EXperiment (ASDEX) divertor tokamak near Munich in Germany, that this anomalous transport was not always observed in the plasma discharges. Two separate regimes were defined as L-type and H-type referring to low and high values respectively of the plasma β_p which measures the ratio of the plasma pressure to the magnetic pressure. Under certain conditions, the plasma discharge would undergo an LH transition, with enhanced plasma confinement times and reduced anomalous transport. This is generally believed to be due to the generation of zonal flows [14]. These zonal flows provide transport barriers and their existence is in fact crucial in regulating the turbulence from the small scale instabilities from which they stem [22], further strengthening the necessity to fully understand drift wave – zonal flow turbulence. If the ITER experiment is successful, fusion energy could be commercially available towards the middle of this century.

In the context of GFD, the understanding of the interaction between β -plane turbulence and zonal flows is deemed crucial to fully comprehend the bigger picture of the overall atmosphere-ocean dynamics on Earth and on planets such as Jupiter and Saturn [23]. A clear and concise understanding of the atmosphere-ocean dynamics is highly desirable, particularly for climate applications. Furthermore, it is believed that the cyclones and anticyclones inherent to the weather in mid-latitudes are due to the baroclinic instability of the atmospheric jet stream indicating that a greater understanding of such features could further improve the parametrisation used in weather forecast models. A feedback mechanism similar to the one described above for the interplay between zonal flows and wave turbulence in tokamaks also exists for Rossby waves in the atmosphere. It is sometimes referred to as the *barotropic governor* in that the barotropic flow controls the level of turbulent behaviour [24]. Barriers to mixing and transport are evident in the Earth's atmosphere at the edge of the Arctic and Antarctic winter polar vortices. The concentration of certain gases, which are otherwise evenly distributed over the poles, can have large gradients at the edge of the polar vortex, which creates a barrier to mixing towards the equator [25, 26]. Likewise, the near-equatorial jet in the stratosphere acts as a barrier, reducing pole-wards transport of volcanic aerosols. By comparison, in the troposphere where the equatorial jet does not reach, the volcanic aerosol is more evenly distributed rather than more concentrated in equatorial latitudes [26, 27]. On the giant gas planets, which exhibit very pronounced zonal jets, transport properties of the atmospheric circulation have been directly measured in recent years by tracking the debris left by the impact of comets on the Jovian atmosphere [8]. In [8] it is argued that while Jupiter's jets may act as transport barriers in the sense that they reduce eddy diffusion in the north-south direction, these barriers are not impenetrable and the extent to which transport is reduced may be less than might be expected from the intensity of Jupiter's jets.

Theoretically, many important aspects of the interactions between zonal flows and wave turbulence can be understood in the context of a simple model system common to both fields, referred to here as the Charney–Hasegawa–Mima

(CHM) model and its extensions. This model, which will be introduced in the next section, is a single two-dimensional scalar partial differential equation (PDE), which expresses the local conservation of a quantity known as potential vorticity. In GFD, it is sometimes referred to as the (equivalent) barotropic potential vorticity (PV) equation. In the light of the discussion above, the CHM model suffers from several important limitations which severely restrict its usefulness as a quantitative model. Firstly, it does not possess any intrinsic instabilities which can lead to the generation of Rossby/drift wave turbulence in the first instance. Secondly, as a model of plasma turbulence, at least if taken literally, it does not produce any plasma transport. On the other hand, the CHM model makes up for these deficiencies by the fact that it is, to a large extent, analytically tractable. Many questions about the interplay between zonal flows and wave turbulence can be answered in detail, thereby providing a conceptual framework for understanding such interactions in more realistic models where quantitative accuracy is often achieved at the cost of reduced ability for analytic understanding and increased reliance on numerical simulations. Furthermore, it was in the CHM model that the framework of the drift wave – zonal flow feedback effect, which is presently believed to be the mechanism of the LH transitions, was first discovered in [15, 16, 28]. This review is devoted to the analysis of zonal flows and Rossby/drift wave turbulence in the CHM model and its immediate extensions, an analysis which turns out to be quite non-trivial, despite the seemingly elementary nature of the models. Such analyses should be viewed as complementary to more detailed analyses and numerical simulations of more realistic models.

1.3. Summary of review contents

This review deals with the spectral aspects of the interactions between turbulence and zonal flows in the CHM model and closely related Extended Hasegawa–Mima (EHM), Hasegawa–Wakatani and Extended Hasegawa–Wakatani (HW/EHW) models. Since the focus is on spectral transport, we mostly consider homogeneous systems and say relatively little about effects arising as a result of spatial inhomogeneity which is certainly important in many applications. The subject is approached primarily from the perspective of wave turbulence theory with a particular emphasis on nonlocal cascades which turn out to play a prominent role in this system. We draw together a number of different theoretical concepts from the wave turbulence literature into a unified and coherent narrative in order to explain their relevance to the problem of zonal flow generation and maintenance. We particularly emphasise the ideas of modulational instability and inverse energy cascade [29] mediated by resonant wave interactions. These are two of the main candidate mechanisms for zonal flow generation, applicable to both Rossby wave and drift wave turbulence. These mechanisms need not be mutually exclusive. Before summarizing the structure of this manuscript let us briefly mention some of the topics which are not discussed. Firstly, we do not attempt to give a comprehensive description of wave turbulence theory in general. Such an account can be found in the reviews by Newell et al. [30, 31] and the recent book by Nazarenko [4]. We do not discuss the statistical mechanics approach to two-dimensional fluid dynamics which can be applied to the structure of large-scale zonal flows. This has been covered in considerable detail in a recent review by Bouchet and Venaille [32]. While we adopt notation which is more common in the GFD literature, we retain a connection to both GFD and plasma physics applications throughout the manuscript since the focus is on common features of the CHM model which are of interest to both disciplines. We do not attempt to delve deeply into more detailed models. For more detailed discussion of zonal flow – wave turbulence interactions in GFD, see the reviews by McIntyre [23] and Dritschel and McIntyre [33] and the references therein. For a detailed discussion of zonal flows and wave turbulence in fusion plasmas and more realistic models of their interaction see the review by Diamond et al. [14].

The layout of the manuscript is as follows. In Sec. 2 we introduce the CHM model and summarise its properties. We establish here various notation conventions which we will use throughout. In this section we also introduce the Extended Hasegawa–Mima, Hasegawa–Wakatani and the Extended Hasegawa–Wakatani models which are closely related models from the plasma physics literature which improve slightly on the CHM model by incorporating a more realistic response of the electron density to fluctuations in the plasma density. In Sec. 3 we provide a pedagogical introduction to wave turbulence theory as applied to the specific case of the CHM equation. This section provides a detailed derivation of the collision operator which appears on the right hand side of the wave kinetic equation and describes the spectral transport of energy and potential enstrophy due to resonant wave-wave interactions in the limit of weakly nonlinear wave turbulence. This section also discusses wave cascades, the Kolmogorov-Zakharov spectra and the important issue of nonlocality. To the extent that Sec. 3 discusses spectral transport in a spatially continuous framework, Sec. 4 provides a complementary summary of finite dimensional models of spectral energy transport. This section includes a pedagogical review of some of the classical results about the dynamics of resonant triads as well

as more recent results on the interplay between discreteness and resonances in finite wave systems. Sections 5 and 6 treat the subject of modulational instability in some depth, the former dealing with linear stability theory and the latter presenting what is known, mostly from numerical simulations, about the nonlinear development of the instability. These sections emphasise the ability of the modulational instability to directly couple small-scale waves to large-scale zonal flows, an archetypal example of a spectrally nonlocal interaction between the two. Cascades are discussed in Sec. 7, particularly the inverse cascade which transports the energy from the small-scale turbulence to large-scale zonal flows in a step-by-step process, similar to the inverse cascade in 2D Navier-Stokes (NS) turbulence [34, 2]. This section also provides a detailed discussion of the somewhat mysterious third invariant (in addition to the energy and potential enstrophy) of the kinetic wave turbulence of Rossby and drift waves, sometimes referred to as the zonostrophy. The pivotal role played by the conservation of zonostrophy in organizing the zonation process in the cascade scenario is demonstrated. It is shown that equivalent invariants exist in discrete turbulence systems where it is only one of many additional quadratic invariants [35]. Finally, Sec. 8 discusses the theory of the wave turbulence – zonal flow feedback loop in the context of the forced CHM, EHM, HW and EHW models. In this section it is shown how nonlocal wave turbulence theory can provide a consistent, weakly nonlinear scenario for the generation and maintenance of zonal flows from a small-scale instability. Here, the weakly nonlinear theory is extended to the strongly nonlinear case, and numerical simulations validating the theoretical predictions are presented. This section is supported by an appendix which provides further detail on how nonlocal wave turbulence theory can be used to calculate spectral transport properties of Rossby/drift wave turbulence. We finish with a short summary and conclusions.

2. The Charney-Hasegawa-Mima equation and related models

2.1. The Charney–Hasegawa–Mima equation

As mentioned above, geophysical quasi-geostrophic (QG) turbulence and plasma drift turbulence share several important structural features and are thus frequently discussed together [36, 37, 14], in particular when discussing zonal flow formation. Both systems are quasi-two-dimensional and anisotropic, exhibit direct and inverse cascades, contain a mixture of wave and vortex dynamics and tend to spontaneously form large scale zonal flows. As a result of these common features, some basic linear and nonlinear properties of these two systems can be described by the same PDE, known as the Charney equation [38] in the geophysical and the Hasegawa-Mima equation [39] in the plasma contexts respectively. The equation is increasingly referred to as the Charney-Hasegawa-Mima (CHM) equation. We shall adopt this term while noting that the same equation is also referred to as the barotropic potential vorticity equation or the equivalent barotropic equation in the geophysical fluid dynamics literature. The equivalence of the Charney and Hasegawa-Mima equations was first pointed out by Hasegawa and MacLennan [36, 37]. It is usually written as an evolution equation for the stream-function, $\psi(\mathbf{x}, t)$,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\nabla^2\psi - F\psi) + \beta \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x} \frac{\partial\nabla^2\psi}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial y} \frac{\partial\nabla^2\psi}{\partial x} = 0. \quad (1)$$

The meaning of the variables and constants in this equation, in both the plasma and geophysical contexts, are explained in Table 1. It is easy to show that this equation is equivalent to an advection equation for a quantity, q , called the potential vorticity:

$$\frac{Dq}{Dt} = 0, \quad (2)$$

where $\frac{D}{Dt} = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla$ is the advective derivative operator associated with the velocity field $\mathbf{v} = (v_x, v_y) = \left(-\frac{\partial\psi}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial x}\right)$ and the potential vorticity, q , is given by

$$q = \nabla^2\psi + \beta y - F\psi. \quad (3)$$

This form makes clear the similarity with the two-dimensional Euler equation. Like the two-dimensional Euler equation, the CHM equation has two inviscid quadratic invariants, the energy, E , and the potential enstrophy, Q :

$$E = \frac{1}{2} \int [(\nabla\psi)^2 + F\psi^2] d\mathbf{x}, \quad (4)$$

$$Q = \frac{1}{2} \int [q - \beta y]^2 d\mathbf{x}. \quad (5)$$

Table 1. Analogy between the drift wave and the Rossby wave

Drift wave	Rossby wave
Electrostatic potential ψ	Streamfunction ψ
Background density n_0	Average depth $\bar{H}$
$\mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}$ drift	Geostrophic flow
Wavelength $\approx 1 \times 10^{-3} \text{m}$	Wavelength $\approx 2 \times 10^6 \text{m}$
Period $\approx 1 \times 10^{-3} \text{s}$	Period $\approx 5 \text{days}$
Ion cyclotron frequency $\omega_{ci} \approx 10^8 \text{s}^{-1}$	Coriolis parameter $f \approx 10^{-4} \text{s}^{-1}$
$\beta = -\omega_{ci} \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \ln n_0$	$\beta = \frac{\partial f}{\partial y}$
Larmor radius $\rho_s = \frac{1}{\omega_{ci}} \sqrt{\frac{T_e}{m_i}} \approx 10^{-3} \text{m}$	Deformation radius $R = \frac{1}{\sqrt{F}} = \frac{\sqrt{g\bar{H}}}{f} \approx 2 \times 10^6 \text{m}$
Drift velocity	Rossby velocity
Dispersion relation $\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = -\frac{\beta k_x \rho_s^2}{1 + \rho_s^2 k^2}$	Dispersion relation $\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = -\frac{\beta k_x}{k^2 + F}$

The difference between the CHM equation and the two-dimensional Euler equation is the presence of the linear term, $\beta \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x}$. As a consequence of this term, the physics of the CHM equation differs from the physics of the two-dimensional Euler equation in two fundamental respects. The first is that the linear term allows the system to support wave motions which are absent in the Euler equation. The second is that it is possible for the linear term to be large compared with the nonlinear ones. The CHM equation, unlike the two-dimensional Euler equation, therefore possesses a weakly nonlinear limit. In the weakly nonlinear limit, the system is dominated by waves with the nonlinearity acting as a weak perturbation although, as we shall see, the cumulative effect of the nonlinearity over time can be large. To quantify the strength of the nonlinearity, we introduce a characteristic length scale, L , a characteristic wave amplitude, A , and a characteristic timescale, $(\beta L)^{-1}$. These are used to define dimensionless variables, $\tilde{\mathbf{x}}$, $\tilde{t}$ and $\tilde{\psi}$ according to $\mathbf{x} = L\tilde{\mathbf{x}}$, $t = \tilde{t}/(\beta L)$, $\psi = A\tilde{\psi}$ and a dimensionless F parameter, $F = L^{-2}\tilde{F}$. Immediately dropping the tildes, the non-dimensional version of Eq. (1) is:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\nabla^2 \psi - F\psi) + \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} + M \left[\frac{\partial \psi}{\partial x} \frac{\partial \nabla^2 \psi}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y} \frac{\partial \nabla^2 \psi}{\partial x} \right] = 0, \quad (6)$$

where, following the notation adopted by Gill [40], we denote the Rossby number by

$$M = \frac{A}{\beta L^3}. \quad (7)$$

In what follows, we will also use a dimensionless (Larmor/deformation) radius

$$\rho = \frac{1}{\sqrt{F}}. \quad (8)$$

Eq. (6) has *exact* monochromatic wave solutions,

$$\psi(\mathbf{x}, t) = A \sin(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{x} - \omega_{\mathbf{k}} t), \quad (9)$$

having dispersion relation

$$\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = -\frac{k_x}{k^2 + F}. \quad (10)$$

These are the Rossby or drift waves referred to above. The time and physical scales associated with each wave type differ by many orders of magnitude and the linear wave frequency of the Rossby wave is much smaller than the Coriolis frequency just as the drift wave frequency is much smaller than the ion cyclotron frequency. The analogy between drift and Rossby waves is given in Table 1 with some typical orders of magnitudes of the variables [37].

Due to the nonlinearity of Eq. (1) the superposition principle does not hold. Superpositions of Rossby waves are generally not exact solutions and usually interact nonlinearly to generate extra modes and exchange energy with them.

This review is about turbulence in the CHM equation, meaning the statistics of energy transfer between different scales of motion. The mechanism of energy transfer is qualitatively different in the weakly nonlinear regime as compared to the strongly nonlinear regime. In both cases, however, exchange of energy between scales of motion is most conveniently studied in Fourier space. In this review we adopt the following normalization convention for the Fourier transform pair in two dimensions:

$$\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}}(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int \psi(\mathbf{x}, t) e^{-i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}} d\mathbf{x} \quad \psi(\mathbf{x}, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}}(t) e^{i\mathbf{k}\cdot\mathbf{x}} d\mathbf{k}. \quad (11)$$

Since the $\psi(\mathbf{x}, t)$ is a real field, its Fourier transform has the symmetry $\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}}^* = \hat{\psi}_{-\mathbf{k}}$. Taking the Fourier transform of Eq. (6) gives

$$\frac{\partial \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = -i\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}} + M \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 T_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}_1} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}_2} \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}}, \quad (12)$$

where $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ is given by Eq. (10) and the nonlinear interaction coefficient, $T_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}}$, is expressed as

$$T_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} = -\frac{1}{4\pi} \frac{(\mathbf{k}_1 \times \mathbf{k}_2)_z (k_1^2 - k_2^2)}{k^2 + F}. \quad (13)$$

We use compact notation for the Dirac delta function, $\delta_{\mathbf{q} \mathbf{r}}^{\mathbf{p}} = \delta(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{q} - \mathbf{r})$, in order to keep subsequent formulae manageable. Note that the nonlinear interaction coefficient, $T_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}}$, has the following symmetries:

$$T_{\mathbf{k}_2 \mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}} = T_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} \quad T_{-\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} = T_{\mathbf{k}_1 -\mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} = -T_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} \quad (14)$$

The energy and enstrophy densities in Fourier space are simply

$$E_{\mathbf{k}} = (k^2 + F) |\psi_{\mathbf{k}}|^2 \quad \text{and} \quad H_{\mathbf{k}} = (k^2 + F)^2 |\psi_{\mathbf{k}}|^2. \quad (15)$$

When discussing wave turbulence, it is convenient to work in so-called wave-action variables, $a_{\mathbf{k}}$, which are defined such that the spectral wave-action density, $n_{\mathbf{k}}$, is related to the spectral energy density, $E_{\mathbf{k}}$, by the relation $E_{\mathbf{k}} = |\omega_{\mathbf{k}}| n_{\mathbf{k}}$. Such variables arise very naturally in the Hamiltonian formulation of the CHM equation [41]. Although we do not make much use of the Hamiltonian formalism in this review, we shall find the concept of wave-action useful in later sections. We therefore adopt the wave-action variables which are defined

$$a_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{k^2 + F}{\sqrt{|k_x|}} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}}. \quad (16)$$

In terms of the $a_{\mathbf{k}}$, Eq. (12) becomes

$$\frac{\partial a_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = -i\omega_{\mathbf{k}} a_{\mathbf{k}} + M \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} a_{\mathbf{k}_1} a_{\mathbf{k}_2} \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}}, \quad (17)$$

where the nonlinear interaction coefficient, $T_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}}$ in Eq. (12), is replaced by

$$W_{\mathbf{q} \mathbf{r}}^{\mathbf{p}} = -\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{|q_x| |r_x|}{|p_x|}} \frac{(\mathbf{q} \times \mathbf{r})_z (q^2 - r^2)}{(q^2 + F)(r^2 + F)}. \quad (18)$$

$W_{\mathbf{q} \mathbf{r}}^{\mathbf{p}}$ inherits the symmetry properties, (14), of the original interaction coefficient:

$$W_{\mathbf{r} \mathbf{q}}^{\mathbf{p}} = W_{\mathbf{q} \mathbf{r}}^{\mathbf{p}} \quad W_{-\mathbf{q} \mathbf{r}}^{\mathbf{p}} = W_{\mathbf{q} -\mathbf{r}}^{\mathbf{p}} = -W_{\mathbf{q} \mathbf{r}}^{\mathbf{p}}. \quad (19)$$

One final choice of variables which we will find useful are the so-called interaction representation variables,

$$b_{\mathbf{k}} = a_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\omega_{\mathbf{k}} t}, \quad (20)$$

in which Eq. (12) takes the form

$$\frac{\partial b_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = M \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} b_{\mathbf{k}_1} b_{\mathbf{k}_2} \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} t}, \quad (21)$$

where $\Omega_{\mathbf{q} \mathbf{r}}^{\mathbf{p}}$ is shorthand notation for $\omega_{\mathbf{p}} - \omega_{\mathbf{q}} - \omega_{\mathbf{r}}$.

2.2. Extended Hasegawa-Mima model

In plasmas, a slightly more complex model is the Extended Hasegawa-Mima (EHM) model that improves the description of the electron response [42] followed by the Hasegawa-Wakatani (HW) model which incorporates an instability forcing mechanism [43]. In GFD the next level of description is the two-layer model which includes baroclinic effects and the respective instability [44] but is not discussed here.

In the plasma context, modes with $k_x = 0$ must be special because for these modes the relation between the plasma potential and the density fluctuations (so called Boltzmann response) fails. In fact, for such modes the density and the potential fields decouple. Such an effect is taken into account in the Extended Hasegawa-Mima (EHM) equation, where the coupling between the flux surface averaged potentials and density fluctuations is removed. As will be shown later, this enhances the growth of ZFs in comparison the the CHM model.

To keep a possibility to switch between the standard CHM and the EHM models, let us introduce a switch parameter s so that $s = 1$ would correspond to EHM and $s = 0$ would correspond to CHM. In Fourier space, the model equation is still Eq. (12) where, as before, $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ is the dispersion relation given by (10), but the interaction coefficient is now defined as

$$T(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2) = \frac{(\mathbf{k}_1 \times \mathbf{k}_2)_z [\rho^2(k_2^2 - k_1^2) + \delta_{s,1}(\delta_{\mathbf{k}_{2,x},0} - \delta_{\mathbf{k}_{1,x},0})]}{(1 + \rho^2 k^2 - \delta_{\mathbf{k}_{x,0}} \delta_{s,1})}. \quad (22)$$

Here $\delta_{s,1}$ and $\delta_{\mathbf{k}_{x,0}}$ are the Kronecker symbol switches: they are equal to one if their two respective arguments coincide and equal to zero otherwise. We see that the extended part of the equation (terms involving δ) acts only on modes with a $k_x = 0$ component, enhancing coupling to the zonal modes. We also see that the difference between CHM and EHM disappears in the $\rho \rightarrow \infty$ limit.

2.3. Forced-dissipated CHM and EHM models

While the simple one-field CHM and EHM models exhibit some very interesting properties of Rossby and drift wave turbulence, their major shortcoming is the inability to spontaneously generate waves. This shortcoming is amended in slightly more complex two-field models, namely the Hasegawa-Wakatani plasma model, explained in the next section and the two-layer QG model in GFD (not discussed here) which contain forcing by primary instability mechanisms, the drift-dissipative and the baroclinic instabilities respectively.

However, one could try to model such instabilities by simply adding to the one-field CHM or EHM models, extra linear terms which would result in the same $\mathbf{k}$ -space distribution of the growth and dissipation rates as those predicted by the more complicated two-field models.

This amounts to simply modifying the expression for the dispersion relation in the respective CHM and EHM models, namely taking Eq. (6) with $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ given by

$$\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{-\beta k_x}{1 + \rho^2 k^2} + i\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}. \quad (23)$$

Here, to the usual dispersion relation, Eq. (10) of the unforced model, we added an imaginary part for the possibility to model systems with an instability type forcing ($\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} > 0$) and dissipation ($\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} < 0$). Such instability forcing is similar in some respects to the Stabilized Negative Viscosity concept of Sukoriansky et al. [45] and has also been investigated recently in the context of wave turbulence in the nonlinear Schrodinger equation [46].

2.4. Hasegawa-Wakatani and extended Hasegawa-Wakatani models

The Hasegawa-Wakatani (HW) model is more realistic and physical than the CHM and, in particular, can spontaneously generate waves because at the level of the linear dynamics it contains a primary instability. The HW model relaxes the constraint of the adiabatic relationship between the density and potential and instead assumes that the density response is coupled to the potential via electron dynamics in the direction parallel to the magnetic field. An extended version, the Extended Hasegawa-Wakatani (EHW) model, analogous to the EHM model discussed above can also be written down. The (E)HW model is a set of coupled equations for the evolution of the density and potential.

$$\begin{aligned}
\partial_t \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}} &= -\frac{\alpha z}{k^2}(\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}} - \hat{n}_{\mathbf{k}}) + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2} T(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2) \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}_1} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}_2} \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1 - \mathbf{k}_2) \\
\partial_t \hat{n}_{\mathbf{k}} &= -i\kappa k_y \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}} + z\alpha(\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}} - \hat{n}_{\mathbf{k}}) - \sum_{\mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2} R(\mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2) \hat{n}_{\mathbf{k}_1} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}_2} \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1 - \mathbf{k}_2)
\end{aligned} \tag{24}$$

where α is a coupling parameter, κ is the mean density gradient (similar to β in CHM/EHM, $z = 1 - \delta_{s,1}\delta_{k_y,0}$ and s is a switching parameter: $s=0$ represents the HW case and $s=1$ represents the EHW case. The interaction coefficients in Eqs (24) are given by

$$\begin{aligned}
R(\mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2) &= (\mathbf{k}_1 \times \mathbf{k}_2)_z, \\
T(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2) &= \frac{(\mathbf{k}_1 \times \mathbf{k}_2)_z (k_2^2 - k_1^2)}{k^2}.
\end{aligned}$$

In the limit $\alpha \gg 1$ the HW/EHW system tends to the familiar CHM/EHM system, whereas in the limit $\alpha \ll 1$ it becomes the 2D Euler equation for the streamfunction ψ with the equation for n describing passive advection of density fluctuations by the velocity associated with ψ . Note that for the HW/EHW models the x - and y -axes have been exchanged with respect to CHM/EHM notations. This is because HW/EHW are purely plasma models and we would like to use the conventions of the plasma literature. (Since CHM is a common model for GFD and plasmas, and since it was first introduced in GFD, the geophysical conventions have been used for that model).

3. Wave turbulence theory for the CHM equation

3.1. Overview of the application of the wave turbulence framework to the CHM equation

When a geophysical flow or plasma becomes turbulent, the nonlinear interaction between different modes in the system leads to the excitation of a very large number of degrees of freedom. The high spatio-temporal complexity of turbulent motion means that only a statistical description makes sense. That is to say, we are interested in correlation functions of the field, $a_{\mathbf{k}}$, appearing in Eq. (17) (or $b_{\mathbf{k}}$ in Eq. (21)). Wave turbulence theory is a framework for studying the statistical dynamics of ensembles of interacting dispersive waves, which includes Rossby/drift waves. Statistical descriptions of turbulent systems are typically stymied by the so-called closure problem: equations for correlation functions of any given order depend on correlation functions of higher orders. An infinite hierarchy of equations must therefore be solved in order to find even the second order correlation function. The theory of wave turbulence has the advantage that it has a weakly nonlinear limit: the theory of *weak* wave turbulence. In this limit, analytic progress is possible because writing higher order correlation functions as products of second order correlation functions (Gaussian closure) can be shown to be asymptotically self-consistent in the sense of large time and weak nonlinearity [47, 48, 30]. Thus, although the equations of weak wave turbulence are often mistakenly considered to be approximations they are actually asymptotically exact in the weakly nonlinear limit. Of course, one can question whether a particular wave system is actually in the weakly nonlinear limit or not but one cannot question that such a limiting case exists. For detailed reading on the theory of weak wave turbulence the reader is referred to [3, 4, 30, 31]. In this section we shall summarize the application of wave turbulence theory to the CHM equation.

The most basic statistical object of interest is the spectrum, $n_{\mathbf{k}}$, which is the second order correlation function (the meaning of the average will be discussed below):

$$n_{\mathbf{k}} \delta_{\mathbf{k}'}^{\mathbf{k}} = \langle a_{\mathbf{k}} a_{\mathbf{k}'}^* \rangle = \langle b_{\mathbf{k}} b_{\mathbf{k}'}^* \rangle, \tag{25}$$

where the Dirac delta function, $\delta_{\mathbf{k}'}^{\mathbf{k}} = \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}')$ arises as a consequence of assuming that the turbulence is statistically homogeneous in space. Statistical homogeneity is an assumption which is probably never completely true in practice although it is theoretically very convenient. Even from a theoretical perspective, recent work [49] has shown that statistical homogeneity can be spontaneously broken in some wave turbulence systems leading to the formation of coherent structures. Notwithstanding these caveats, we shall assume statistical homogeneity for now.

The main output of the theory of wave turbulence as applied to Rossby/drift waves is the Rossby wave kinetic equation, Eq. (63) below. This equation describes how the wave spectrum, Eq. (25), evolves in time as a result of

the spectral redistribution of energy by nonlinear interactions between waves. The wave turbulence literature has a reputation for being technically difficult and indeed many of the key papers in the field contain a lot of algebra, making them seem confusing to the outsider. In reality, the ideas underlying the theory are rather straight-forward and based on standard methods from perturbation theory. Much of the algebraic complexity is simply an unavoidable consequence of the fact that one needs to go to second order in perturbation theory in order to get a non-trivial result. In the next section, we will provide a brief summary of the origin of the wave kinetic equation. It is based on the standard perturbative expansion of the solution of Eq. (21) in powers of the small nonlinearity, $\epsilon \equiv M \ll 1$:

$$b_{\mathbf{k}}(t) = b_{\mathbf{k}}^{(0)}(t) + \epsilon b_{\mathbf{k}}^{(1)}(t) + \epsilon^2 b_{\mathbf{k}}^{(2)}(t) + \dots \quad (26)$$

The first few terms in the expansion are found to be

$$b_{\mathbf{k}}^{(0)}(t) = B_{\mathbf{k}} \quad (27)$$

$$b_{\mathbf{k}}^{(1)}(t) = \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} B_{\mathbf{k}_1} B_{\mathbf{k}_2} \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} \Delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}}, t) \quad (28)$$

$$b_{\mathbf{k}}^{(2)}(t) = -2 \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 d\mathbf{k}_3 d\mathbf{k}_4 W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} W_{\mathbf{k}_3 \mathbf{k}_4}^{\mathbf{k}_1} B_{\mathbf{k}_2} B_{\mathbf{k}_3} B_{\mathbf{k}_4} \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} \delta_{\mathbf{k}_3 \mathbf{k}_4}^{\mathbf{k}_1} E(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}_2 \mathbf{k}_3 \mathbf{k}_4}^{\mathbf{k}_1}, \Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}_1}, t) \quad (29)$$

where the $B_{\mathbf{k}}$ are constants and all the time-dependence is encoded in the integral functions

$$\Delta(x, t) = \int_0^t d\tau e^{i x \tau} = \frac{e^{i x t} - 1}{i x} \quad (30)$$

$$E(x, y, t) = \int_0^t d\tau \Delta(x - y, \tau) e^{i y \tau}. \quad (31)$$

To second order in perturbation theory, the wave spectrum is therefore given by

$$\begin{aligned} n_{\mathbf{p}}(t) \delta_{\mathbf{p}'}^{\mathbf{p}} &= \langle B_{\mathbf{p}} B_{\mathbf{p}'}^* \rangle \\ &+ \epsilon \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}'} \langle B_{\mathbf{p}} B_{\mathbf{k}_1}^* B_{\mathbf{k}_2}^* \rangle \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}'} \Delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{p}'}^{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}, t) \\ &+ \epsilon \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} \langle B_{\mathbf{p}'}^* B_{\mathbf{k}_1} B_{\mathbf{k}_2} \rangle \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} \Delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}}, t) \\ &- 4 \epsilon^2 \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 d\mathbf{k}_3 d\mathbf{k}_4 W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} W_{\mathbf{k}_3 \mathbf{k}_4}^{\mathbf{k}_1} \text{Re} \left[\langle B_{\mathbf{p}'}^* B_{\mathbf{k}_2} B_{\mathbf{k}_3} B_{\mathbf{k}_4} \rangle \right] \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} \delta_{\mathbf{k}_3 \mathbf{k}_4}^{\mathbf{k}_1} E(\Omega_{\mathbf{p}}^{\mathbf{k}_2 \mathbf{k}_3 \mathbf{k}_4}, \Omega_{\mathbf{p}}^{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}, t) \\ &+ \epsilon^2 \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 d\mathbf{k}_3 d\mathbf{k}_4 W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} W_{\mathbf{k}_3 \mathbf{k}_4}^{\mathbf{p}'} \langle B_{\mathbf{k}_1} B_{\mathbf{k}_2} B_{\mathbf{k}_3}^* B_{\mathbf{k}_4}^* \rangle \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} \delta_{\mathbf{k}_3 \mathbf{k}_4}^{\mathbf{p}'} \Delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}}, t) \Delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{p}'}^{\mathbf{k}_3 \mathbf{k}_4}, t). \end{aligned} \quad (32)$$

Before proceeding, however, there are two key concepts which a reader interested in understanding the derivation of the kinetic equation should pay attention to. The first of these is the use of Wick's rule to re-express higher order correlation functions of $a_{\mathbf{k}}$ in terms of the second order correlation function or wave spectrum, $n_{\mathbf{k}}$, appearing in Eq. (25). The second is the use of the method of multiple scales to deal with the non-uniformity of the perturbation theory which results from resonant interactions between waves. We first discuss each of these in turn before turning to the discussion of the kinetic equation proper.

3.1.1. The meaning of averaging in wave turbulence and quasi-Gaussianity

The averaging procedure used to calculate the spectrum in Eq. (25) and the higher order correlation functions of $b_{\mathbf{k}}$ in Eq. (32) is usually understood to be an ensemble average with respect to independent realizations of the initial conditions, $B_{\mathbf{k}}$. In practice, particularly in the case of steady wave turbulence, it is common to replace the ensemble average with a time average under the assumption of ergodicity. The question then arises of what statistics to assume for the $B_{\mathbf{k}}$? If the $B_{\mathbf{k}}$ were assumed to be Gaussian, the higher order correlation functions appearing in Eq. (32) could be expressed in terms of products of the second order correlation function, $n_{\mathbf{k}}(0)$, and we would obtain a closed

equation for $n_{\mathbf{k}}(t)$. Taking into account that $\langle B_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle = 0$ and using the fact that $b_{\mathbf{k}}^* = b_{-\mathbf{k}}$ and taking $s_i = \pm 1$, one can write a general third or fourth order correlation function as:

$$\langle B_{s_1 \mathbf{k}_1} B_{s_2 \mathbf{k}_2} B_{s_3 \mathbf{k}_3} \rangle = Q_{s_1 \mathbf{k}_1 s_2 \mathbf{k}_2 s_3 \mathbf{k}_3}^{(3)} \quad (33)$$

$$\langle B_{s_1 \mathbf{k}_1} B_{s_2 \mathbf{k}_2} B_{s_3 \mathbf{k}_3} B_{s_4 \mathbf{k}_4} \rangle = n_{\mathbf{k}_1} n_{\mathbf{k}_2} \delta_{s_1 \mathbf{k}_1}^{s_3 \mathbf{k}_3} \delta_{s_2 \mathbf{k}_2}^{s_4 \mathbf{k}_4} + n_{\mathbf{k}_1} n_{\mathbf{k}_3} \delta_{s_1 \mathbf{k}_1}^{s_2 \mathbf{k}_2} \delta_{s_3 \mathbf{k}_3}^{s_4 \mathbf{k}_4} + n_{\mathbf{k}_1} n_{\mathbf{k}_2} \delta_{s_4 \mathbf{k}_4}^{s_1 \mathbf{k}_1} \delta_{s_3 \mathbf{k}_3}^{s_2 \mathbf{k}_2} + Q_{s_1 \mathbf{k}_1 s_2 \mathbf{k}_2 s_3 \mathbf{k}_3 s_4 \mathbf{k}_4}^{(4)} \quad (34)$$

where $Q^{(3)}$ and $Q^{(4)}$ are the appropriate third and fourth order cumulants of the field $b_{\mathbf{k}}$. Recall that for any random variable, the cumulant of a given order is *defined* as the difference between a moment of that order and the value it would have if the random variable were Gaussian. In the original papers on wave turbulence by Hasselmann, Zakharov and others, it was argued that the wave field should be close to Gaussian (sometimes referred to as Gaussianity) and the cumulants can thus be neglected on the basis that the phases of individual modes can be modeled as independent random variables. This is really an ansatz rather than a controlled approximation. It is the analogue for waves of the assumption of molecular chaos which Boltzmann appealed to in the derivation of the Boltzmann equation in the kinetic theory of particles. The neglect of the cumulants was shown to be theoretically justifiable in an asymptotic sense by Benney and Newell provided that the cumulants are smooth in the $\mathbf{k}$ -space (which means that in the physical space they rapidly decay at the infinite point separations) [47, 48, 30]. They showed that even if the cumulants are nonzero initially, they decay for large times due to the fact that they never involve resonant interactions between waves. Resonances between waves and their importance will be discussed in Sec. 3.2 below. In fact one can weaken the assumption of Gaussianity by writing the $B_{\mathbf{k}} = J_{\mathbf{k}} e^{i\theta_{\mathbf{k}}}$ and assuming that both the amplitudes, $J_{\mathbf{k}}$, and the phases, $\theta_{\mathbf{k}}$ are independent random variables for each mode, $\mathbf{k}$ [50, 51]. The random phases and amplitudes approach is related to, but not equivalent to, the quasi-Gaussian approximation. In particular, one does not have to assume that the amplitudes, $J_{\mathbf{k}}$, have a Rayleigh distribution as would be the case if the field $b_{\mathbf{k}}$ were Gaussian [52]. Both approaches give the same kinetic equation so we shall not go into further discussion of the distinctions here. The interested reader is referred to the detailed discussion in [4]. From this point on, we will simply neglect the cumulants appearing in Eqs (33) and (34). We emphasize however that, unlike in the case of Navier-Stokes turbulence or the classical kinetic theory of gases, this neglect is theoretically justifiable for large times and weak nonlinearity and the interested reader is referred to the above references for details.

3.1.2. Non-uniformity of regular perturbation theory for a nonlinear oscillator

While analytic or numerical solutions of nonlinear wave equations like Eq. (1) may indicate that the solution remains bounded in time, the regular perturbative expansion of the solution in powers of the nonlinearity parameter, ϵ , often contains terms which are proportional to t . These terms which are unbounded in time are known as *secular* terms for historical reasons. If secular terms are present, expansions like Eq. (26) become inconsistent for times of the order ϵ^{-1} . Secular terms arise due to nonlinear resonances between the components of the solution at different orders in perturbation theory. There are several standard modifications of regular perturbation theory which allow resonances to be accounted for consistently. One such approach is known as multiple scale analysis. An understanding of the concept of resonance for nonlinear waves and the use of multiple scale analysis to account for their effects is essential to understanding wave turbulence in the CHM equation or any other system of interacting dispersive waves. The main ideas can get lost in the algebraic complexity of the expansion of Eq. (26). For this reason, we first briefly illustrate the main concepts in a much simpler example which nevertheless exhibits all of the essential features of the full problem. Consider the anharmonic (Duffing) oscillator:

$$\frac{d^2 x}{dt^2} + \omega^2 x = \epsilon x^3, \quad x(0) = a, \quad \frac{dx}{dt}(0) = 0. \quad (35)$$

As with Eq. (26), let us assume that the solution can be written as an expansion in powers of ϵ when ϵ is small:

$$x(t) = x_0(t) + \epsilon x_1(t) + \epsilon^2 x_2(t) + \dots \quad (36)$$

Substituting this into Eq. (35) yields a hierarchy of perturbative equations, the first three of which are:

$$\left(\frac{d^2}{dt^2} + \omega^2\right)x_0 = 0, \quad x_0(0) - a = 0, \quad \frac{dx_0}{dt}(0) = 0, \quad (37)$$

$$\left(\frac{d^2}{dt^2} + \omega^2\right)x_1 = x_0^3, \quad x_1(0) = 0, \quad \frac{dx_1}{dt}(0) = 0, \quad (38)$$

$$\left(\frac{d^2}{dt^2} + \omega^2\right)x_2 = 3x_1x_0^2, \quad x_2(0) = 0, \quad \frac{dx_2}{dt}(0) = 0. \quad (39)$$

These equations can be solved sequentially. The leading order solution is

$$x_0(t) = A_0 e^{i\omega t} + A_0^* e^{-i\omega t}, \quad (40)$$

where A_0 is a constant which can be determined from the initial conditions. Note, however, what happens when this leading order solution is substituted into Eq. (38). We obtain

$$\left(\frac{d^2}{dt^2} + \omega^2\right)x_1 = A_0^3 e^{3i\omega t} + 3|A_0|^2 A_0^* e^{i\omega t} + \text{cc}, \quad (41)$$

where cc denotes the complex conjugate of the preceding terms. The solution of the homogeneous equation is

$$x_1(t) = A_1 e^{i\omega t} + A_1^* e^{-i\omega t}, \quad (42)$$

where A_1 is a constant. Observe that the forcing term on the right hand side of Eq. (41) which came from the lower order solution, $x_0(t)$, contains a term with the same fundamental frequency, ω , as the homogeneous solution. This is an elementary example of nonlinear resonance. This phenomenon is fundamental to the theory of wave turbulence. The effect of resonance can be seen clearly when we find the particular solution of Eq. (41). Using, for example, the method of variation of constants, one can find the particular solutions associated with the two forcing terms on the right hand side. The first (non-resonant) term yields the particular solution

$$x_1^{P1}(t) = -\frac{A_0^3}{4\omega^2} e^{3i\omega t} + \text{cc}, \quad (43)$$

which is bounded for all t . The second (resonant) term yields the particular solution containing a secular term growing proportional to t ,

$$x_1^{P2}(t) = \frac{3|A_0|^2 A_0}{4\omega^2} e^{i\omega t} + \frac{3|A_0|^2 A_0}{2i\omega} t e^{i\omega t} + \text{cc}, \quad (44)$$

which is unbounded as t grows. Using the initial conditions to fix the constants, A_0 and A_1 we obtain

$$x(t) = a \cos(\omega t) + \epsilon \left[\frac{a^3}{32\omega^2} \cos(\omega t) - \frac{a^3}{32\omega^2} \cos(3\omega t) + \frac{3a^3}{8\omega} t \sin(\omega t) \right] + O(\epsilon^2). \quad (45)$$

Assuming that a and ω are of order 1, we see that the second term becomes as large as the first term when $t \sim \epsilon^{-1}$. Such an expansion is said to be non-uniform in t . At times of order ϵ^{-1} , the perturbation expansion breaks down. As we shall see, exactly the same effect occurs in the expansion Eq. (32). This is a problem for wave turbulence since we are interested in the long-time statistical dynamics of the wave field.

One approach to taking into account the effect of resonances and obtaining a perturbative expansion which is uniformly valid for times greater than ϵ^{-1} is the method of multiscale analysis. We shall apply this method below to the wave turbulence problem so let us first illustrate how it works in the case of the anharmonic oscillator. For an excellent detailed introduction to this method and its applications see [53, chap. 11].

The idea is to assume that $x(t)$, and hence the $x_i(t)$ appearing in the perturbation expansion (36), are functions of multiple timescales. That is to say, rather than thinking of $x_i(t)$, we think of $x_i(T_0, T_1, T_2, \dots)$ where the variables $T_n = \epsilon^n t$ will be treated as *independent*. The physical motivation for this is the recognition that when ϵ is very small,

the timescale for nonlinear effects to become significant is much longer than the timescale for the linear motion of the oscillator. With this assumption, we should write

$$\frac{d^2}{dt^2} = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial T_0^2} + 2\epsilon \frac{\partial^2}{\partial T_1 \partial T_0} + \epsilon^2 \left(2 \frac{\partial^2}{\partial T_2 \partial T_0} + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial T_1^2} \right) + \dots \quad (46)$$

Eqs (37)–(39) are modified to

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial T_0^2} + \omega^2 \right) x_0 = 0, \quad (47)$$

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial T_0^2} + \omega^2 \right) x_1 = x_0^3 - 2 \frac{\partial^2 x_0}{\partial T_1 \partial T_0}, \quad (48)$$

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial T_0^2} + \omega^2 \right) x_2 = 3x_1 x_0^2 - 2 \frac{\partial^2 x_1}{\partial T_1 \partial T_0} - 2 \frac{\partial^2 x_0}{\partial T_2 \partial T_0} - \frac{\partial^2 x_0}{\partial T_1^2}. \quad (49)$$

The initial conditions remain the same but must be interpreted carefully since the x_i are now functions of many variables. We will restrict subsequent discussion to capturing only the dependence on T_0 and T_1 since this is sufficient to illustrate the points we wish to make but, in principle, the method can be continued to higher orders. The zero order solution is

$$x_0(T_0, T_1) = A_0(T_1) e^{i\omega T_0} + A_0^*(T_1) e^{-i\omega T_0}, \quad (50)$$

where $A_0(T_1)$ is an arbitrary *function* of T_1 . The idea of multiple scale analysis is that we choose this dependence of the zeroth order solution, x_0 , on the slow timescale, T_1 , in order to remove the secular terms which appear at next order. Upon substitution of Eq. (50) into Eq. (48), we see that the appropriate condition to impose on $A_0(T_1)$ is

$$\frac{\partial A_0}{\partial T_1} = -\frac{3i}{2\omega} |A_0|^2 A_0. \quad (51)$$

If $A_0(T_1)$ satisfies this consistency condition, then no secular terms appear in the expression for x_1 :

$$x_1(T_0, T_1) = A_1 e^{i\omega T_0} - \frac{A_0(T_1)^3}{8\omega^2} e^{3i\omega T_0} + \text{cc},$$

where A_1 is a constant to this order in the multiple scale expansion. It may not always be easy to solve the consistency conditions which arise in multiscale analysis. In the case of Eq. (51), once we recognize that

$$\frac{d}{dT_1} |A_0|^2 = 0, \quad (52)$$

we can write down the solution immediately:

$$A_0(T_1) = A_0(0) e^{-\frac{3|A_0(0)|^2}{2\omega} i T_1}. \quad (53)$$

Using the initial conditions to fix $A_0(0)$, we find that the leading order term in the modified perturbation theory is

$$x_0(t) = a \cos \left[\left(\omega - \frac{3a^2}{8\omega} \epsilon \right) t \right], \quad (54)$$

which is bounded for all time with the effect of the nonlinearity being simply to shift the frequency of oscillation. This expression is valid up to times of order $\epsilon^{-2} t$ which is the timescale at which our neglect of the dependence of the solution on the timescale T_2 above becomes inconsistent. Note that the leading order term actually contains terms of all orders in ϵ . By solving the consistency condition (51), we have, in effect, summed up a subset of the terms occurring at *all* orders in the regular perturbation theory. The connections between methods of asymptotic analysis like the method of multiple timescales and the summation of perturbation series are both extensive and deep and have been developed extensively by Goldenfeld and co-workers. See for example [54] and the references therein.

A word of caution is due about not taking the above analogy between the Duffing oscillator and the weak wave turbulence too far. One can see in Eq. (54) that the main effect in the correct solution for the nonlinear oscillator is a frequency shift. Basically, a similar effect is expected in the leading order of the nonlinear interaction for some four-wave systems, eg. the Nonlinear Schrödinger model. However, this effect does not lead to a redistribution of energy among the resonant modes: the latter appears in the next order of expansion of the weak wave turbulence and it cannot be captured by any finite dimensional analog model.

3.2. The Rossby/drift wave kinetic equation

Let us now return to the perturbation expansion (32) for the wave spectrum, $n_{\mathbf{k}}$. The reader should bear in mind the illustrative example of the previous section in order to see the key features of the derivation. Firstly, we use Eqs (33) and (34) to write the third and fourth order correlation functions appearing in Eq. (32) in terms of products of $n_{\mathbf{k}}$. We neglect the cumulants for the reasons discussed in Sec. 3.1.1. All order ϵ terms are zero since $\langle B_{\mathbf{k}} \rangle = 0$ and the first non-trivial terms appear at order ϵ^2 . We obtain six terms in total which we will not write out here. By integrating out two delta functions from each of these terms, using the symmetries from Eq. (19) of $W_{\mathbf{q}\mathbf{r}}^{\mathbf{p}}$ (including noticing that $W_{\mathbf{q}-\mathbf{q}}^{\mathbf{p}} = 0$) and relabelling integration variables, these terms can be brought to the form

$$\begin{aligned} n_{\mathbf{p}}(t) \delta_{\mathbf{p}}^{\mathbf{p}} &= n_{\mathbf{p}}^{(0)} \delta_{\mathbf{p}}^{\mathbf{p}} + 2\epsilon^2 \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} n_{\mathbf{k}_1} n_{\mathbf{k}_2} \Delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}}, t) \Delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{p}}^{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}, t) \delta_{\mathbf{p}}^{\mathbf{p}} \\ &\quad - 8\epsilon^2 \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} W_{\mathbf{p} \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}_1} \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} n_{\mathbf{p}} n_{\mathbf{k}_2} \operatorname{Re} \left[E(0, \Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}}; t) \right] \delta_{\mathbf{p}}^{\mathbf{p}}. \end{aligned} \quad (55)$$

This exercise will take the determined reader a page or two of algebra. Note that the zeroth order term, $n_{\mathbf{p}}^{(0)}$ is independent of time. As t gets large, the quantities Δ and E appearing in this equation behave (under the integral sign) as follows [47]:

$$\Delta(x; t) \Delta(-x; t) \sim 2\pi t \delta(x) + 2\mathcal{P} \left(\frac{1}{x} \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \quad (56)$$

$$E(0, x; t) \sim \left[\pi \delta(x) + i\mathcal{P} \left(\frac{1}{x} \right) \right] t - i \left[\pi \delta(x) + i\mathcal{P} \left(\frac{1}{x} \right) \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \right], \quad (57)$$

where $\mathcal{P}$ denotes the Cauchy Principle Value of the integral. The important point to notice is that they contain components which grow proportional to t . Therefore, as t gets large we find that to order ϵ^2 :

$$n_{\mathbf{p}}(t) = n_{\mathbf{p}}^{(0)} + (\epsilon^2 t) S \left[n_{\mathbf{p}}^0 \right] + \epsilon^2 [\text{terms bounded in } t], \quad (58)$$

where

$$S \left[n_{\mathbf{p}}^0 \right] = 4\pi \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} n_{\mathbf{k}_1} n_{\mathbf{k}_2} \delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}}) - 8\pi \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} W_{\mathbf{p} \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}_1} \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} n_{\mathbf{p}} n_{\mathbf{k}_2} \delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}}). \quad (59)$$

These terms are the analogue for the statistical initial value problem for the wave spectrum, $n_{\mathbf{k}}$, of the secular terms appearing in the perturbative solution, Eq. (45), of the initial value problem for the anharmonic oscillator discussed above. They render the perturbation theory inconsistent for times of order ϵ^{-2} . Notice that, as in the case of the anharmonic oscillator, these secular terms arise as a result of resonances: the integrand in Eq. (59) is supported on triads of wavenumbers, $(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2)$, which satisfy the resonance conditions

$$\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{k}_1 + \mathbf{k}_2 \quad \omega_{\mathbf{p}} = \omega_{\mathbf{k}_1} + \omega_{\mathbf{k}_2}. \quad (60)$$

To account for the presence of resonances and extend the range of validity of the perturbation theory, we can do exactly as we did in Sec. 3.1.2 and use the method of multiple scales. There is no need for a timescale, $T_1 = \epsilon t$ since there are no terms of order ϵ in the expansion. The relevant timescale is $T_2 = \epsilon^2 t$. Therefore we assume that the lowest order term, $n_{\mathbf{p}}^{(0)}$ depends on T_2 and, as in Sec. 3.1.2, choose the dependence $n_{\mathbf{p}}^{(0)}(T_2)$ so that the secular terms, Eq. (59) are cancelled from the expansion. In principle, we should go back to Eqs (26), write out the perturbative

expansion for $\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{p}}}{\partial t}$, identify the terms which lead to the secular terms in Eq. (58) and set them equal to $\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{p}}^{(0)}}{\partial T_2}$. In practice, since the terms inside the integral in Eq. (59) are all independent of t (or T_0), we can just write down the consistency condition directly by inspection:

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{p}}^{(0)}}{\partial T_2} = S \left[n_{\mathbf{p}}^0(T_2) \right]. \quad (61)$$

This is the wave kinetic equation and is the analogue of Eq. (51) for the anharmonic oscillator. It tells us how nonlinear resonances between waves cause the wave spectrum, $n_{\mathbf{p}}$ to evolve on the slow timescale, T_2 . That is to say, it tells us how the cumulative effect of weak resonant interactions between waves leads to a spectral redistribution of energy over time. When the resonant conditions, Eq. (60) are satisfied, one can show that $W_{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{r}}^{\mathbf{q}} = \text{sgn}(\omega_{\mathbf{p}}\omega_{\mathbf{q}})n_{\mathbf{p}}n_{\mathbf{r}}$. This allows the collision integral to be written in the compact form:

$$S \left[n_{\mathbf{p}} \right] = 4\pi\epsilon^2 \int d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 \left| W_{\mathbf{k}_1\mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} \right|^2 \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1\mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}} \delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1\mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{p}}) \left[n_{\mathbf{k}_1}n_{\mathbf{k}_2} - \text{sgn}(\omega_{\mathbf{p}}\omega_{\mathbf{k}_2})n_{\mathbf{p}}n_{\mathbf{k}_1} - \text{sgn}(\omega_{\mathbf{p}}\omega_{\mathbf{k}_1})n_{\mathbf{p}}n_{\mathbf{k}_2} \right]. \quad (62)$$

We have dropped the superscript (0) from the wave spectrum although strictly speaking the kinetic equation as written above is valid only up to times of order ϵ^{-4} (not ϵ^{-3} as one might naively guess since all terms of order ϵ^3 can also be shown to be zero). At this point, it is appropriate to reintroduce forcing and dissipation which are usually present in practice. Thus the main conclusion of this section is that in the weakly nonlinear limit, the wave spectrum, evolved in time according to the wave kinetic equation:

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{p}}}{\partial t} = S \left[n_{\mathbf{p}} \right] + f_{\mathbf{p}} - \gamma_{\mathbf{p}} n_{\mathbf{p}}, \quad (63)$$

where $S \left[n_{\mathbf{p}} \right]$ is given by Eq. (62) above, $f_{\mathbf{p}}$ models additive forcing and $\gamma_{\mathbf{p}}$ models multiplicative forcing or dissipation (depending on the sign). A particular example of the form of $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}$ will be given in Sec. 8. Several different forms of the collision integral appear in the literature which may cause confusion. In particular, Zakharov and co-workers usually prefer to write Eq. (12) in Hamiltonian variables [41] prior to performing the perturbation expansion. This leads to a different interaction coefficient, often written as $V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}$, appearing in the theory:

$$V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}} = \text{sgn}(p_x) \sqrt{\beta |p_x q_x r_x|} \left(\frac{q_y}{q^2 + F} + \frac{r_y}{r^2 + F} - \frac{p_y}{p^2 + F} \right). \quad (64)$$

This interaction coefficient has more symmetries than the original interaction coefficients, $T_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}$ and $W_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}$ which appear in Eqs (12) and (17) respectively, which is related to the generic symmetries of the cubic Hamiltonians. Under permutations of the components of its arguments, $V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}$ has the symmetries

$$V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}} = V_{\mathbf{rq}}^{\mathbf{p}} = -V_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{q}}^{\mathbf{r}}. \quad (65)$$

Under changes of sign of the components of its arguments it has the symmetries

$$V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}} = -V_{(q_x, -q_y)(r_x, -r_y)}^{(p_x, -p_y)} = -V_{(q_x, q_y)(r_x, r_y)}^{(-p_x, p_y)} = V_{(-q_x, q_y)(r_x, r_y)}^{(p_x, p_y)} = V_{(q_x, q_y)(-r_x, r_y)}^{(p_x, p_y)}. \quad (66)$$

Some lengthy algebraic manipulations show that $V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}} = W_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}$ provided that $\omega_{\mathbf{p}} = \omega_{\mathbf{q}} + \omega_{\mathbf{r}}$. The two formulations are therefore equivalent *on the resonant manifold* (see e.g. [4]). It is often convenient to work with the more symmetric form, Eq. (64), but this is only appropriate when one is interested in the weakly nonlinear limit where resonant interactions dominate. If one is discussing quasi-resonant interactions or the strongly nonlinear regime, then the true interaction coefficient, Eq. (18), (or Eq. (13) if using the original streamfunction variables) must be used. When reading the literature this distinction is important to keep in mind.

Before continuing, let us rewrite the kinetic equation in a more symmetric form which commonly appears in the literature and is more convenient for some analyses. Since the function $\psi(\mathbf{x}, t)$ is real, we know that $a_{-\mathbf{k}} = a_{\mathbf{k}}^*$. We therefore need only half the Fourier space to specify $n_{\mathbf{p}}$ and its evolution. One can therefore work solely with the half-plane $p_x \geq 0$. Let us divide the domain of the collision integral, Eq. (62) into 4 regions, depending on the signs of k_{1x} and k_{2x} . Using the fact that $n_{\mathbf{k}} = n_{-\mathbf{k}}$ together with the symmetries, Eq. (65), of the interaction coefficient, we can

Figure 1. Shape of the resonant manifold determined by Eq. (70) with $\mathbf{k} = (\cos \theta, \sin \theta)$ for several values of θ for the case $F = 0$.

map the 3 regions containing negative values of k_{1x} and/or k_{2x} onto the region $k_{1x}, k_{2x} \geq 0$ (although the region where both k_{1x} and k_{2x} are negative gives no contribution since the delta function vanishes identically there). The collision integral, Eq. (62) then takes the form

$$S[n_p] = \int_{k_{1x}, k_{2x} \geq 0} d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 [\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^p - \mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{k}_2 \mathbf{p}}^{\mathbf{k}_1} - \mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{p} \mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}_2}], \quad (67)$$

where

$$\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^p = 4\pi\epsilon^2 \left| V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^p \right|^2 \delta_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^p \delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^p) [n_{\mathbf{k}_1} n_{\mathbf{k}_2} - n_p n_{\mathbf{k}_1} - n_{\mathbf{k}_2} n_p].$$

3.2.1. Breakdown of weak wave turbulence

While the solution of the wave kinetic equation, $n_{\mathbf{k}}(t)$, aims to describe the evolution of the wave spectrum due to the cumulative effect of nonlinear resonances between waves, it is important to remember that Eq. (63) has been derived under the assumption that weak nonlinearity leads to a separation in timescales between the timescale of the linear waves and the timescale over which nonlinearity acts to redistribute wave action between different wavenumbers. Without such a separation of timescales, the multiscale analysis above would not make any sense. One can estimate the linear timescale, which we shall denote by τ_L , from the dispersion relation. The nonlinear (or kinetic) timescale, which we denote by τ_{NL} is obtained from the kinetic equation itself. One finds:

$$\tau_L = |\omega_{\mathbf{k}}|^{-1} \quad \tau_{NL} = \frac{n_{\mathbf{k}}}{|\partial_t n_{\mathbf{k}}|}. \quad (68)$$

The criterion for separation of timescales is:

$$\frac{\tau_{NL}}{\tau_L} \ll 1. \quad (69)$$

Note however, that this relation depends on the wavenumber, $\mathbf{k}$, and on the solution of the kinetic equation, $n_{\mathbf{k}}$, through the definitions in Eqs (68). It is possible that the solution of the kinetic equation can lead to the violation of timescale separation at certain scales, even if one assumed weak nonlinearity at the outset. Indeed, in applications it frequently occurs that $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$, $V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}}$ and $n_{\mathbf{k}}$ are power law functions of k_x and k_y . For such systems, it is almost inevitable that the criterion (69) is violated either at very large or very small values of k_x or/and k_y . This violation is sometimes referred to in the literature as “breakdown” of weak wave turbulence [30, 55]. In regions of wavenumber space where Eq. (69) is violated, the wave turbulence presumably becomes strong. This reasoning leads one to suspect that weak and strong nonlinearity may coexist in the same system on different scales.

3.2.2. Structure of the resonance curves

The resonance conditions are central to the theory of weak wave turbulence. If one of the modes, say $\mathbf{k}$, is fixed then the other two must lie on a one-dimensional curve in the wavevector space defined by Eqs (60). From Eq. (10), this curve, taken as an equation for $\mathbf{k}_1 = (k_{1x}, k_{1y})$, is given in implicit form by the equation:

$$\frac{k_{1x}}{k_{1x}^2 + k_{1y}^2 + F} + \frac{k_x - k_{1x}}{(k_x - k_{1x})^2 + (k_y - k_{1y})^2 + F} - \frac{k_x}{k_x^2 + k_y^2 + F} = 0. \quad (70)$$

Because the system is anisotropic, the shape of resonant manifold depends on the direction of $\mathbf{k}$ as shown in Fig. 1. When $\mathbf{k}$ is zonal, the resonant curve becomes unbounded and consists of the k_{1y} axis and the line $k_{1y} = k_y$.

3.3. Anisotropic stationary solutions of the wave kinetic equation: the Kolmogorov-Zakharov spectra

One of the attractions of the theory of wave turbulence is that under certain conditions, exact stationary solutions of the wave kinetic equation, Eq. (63), can be found analytically in the physically important limiting case where the forcing and dissipation scales are infinitely separated in scale. In this limit, stationary spectra correspond to functions $n_{\mathbf{k}}$ which make the collision integral, Eq. (62) or (67), equal to zero. Such stationary solutions fall into two classes. The first class are equilibrium spectra. They correspond to equipartition of conserved quantities in the $\mathbf{k}$ -space and are usually obvious zeroes of the collision integral. The second class are stationary non-equilibrium states known as Kolmogorov-Zakharov (KZ) spectra. They are determined by the input rates of conserved quantities (their constant k -fluxes if the system is isotropic). The KZ spectra are the analogue for driven wave dynamics of Kolmogorov's $k^{-5/3}$ spectrum of vortex turbulence and explain the origin of the term “wave turbulence”. They are highly non-trivial zeroes of the collision integral. In this section we will summarise what is known about the KZ solutions of the Rossby wave kinetic equation.

The theory of KZ-spectra was developed in the context of isotropic, scale invariant systems. Isotropy means that the dispersion relation, $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ and the wave interaction coefficient, $V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}$, appearing in the collision integral are functions of $|\mathbf{k}|$ s only. Scale invariance means that $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}$ are homogeneous functions of their arguments. That is to say, there are exponents α and β such that if wavevectors are scaled by a factor of h , we have

$$\omega_{h\mathbf{k}} = h^\alpha \omega_{\mathbf{k}} \quad V_{h\mathbf{q}h\mathbf{r}}^{h\mathbf{p}} = h^\beta V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}. \quad (71)$$

The degrees of homogeneity vary according to the application [56]. In the case of scale invariant systems, the stationary spectrum is a power law function of $|\mathbf{k}|$. Under these conditions, the collision integral to be simplified to involve integrals over $|\mathbf{k}|$'s only and all stationary power law solutions can be found exactly using a set of ingenious transformations discovered independently by Zakharov [57] and Kraichnan [2]. The details of the Zakharov-Kraichnan transformations can be found in several existing reviews of the theory of wave turbulence [58, 3, 30, 4].

Rossby/drift wave turbulence is, however, neither isotropic nor scale invariant. Isotropy is broken by the second term in Eq. (6). Scale invariance is broken by the deformation length (or ion Larmor radius) which sets a preferred scale and gives rise to the F term in Eq (6). One cannot therefore directly apply the Zakharov-Kraichnan transformations to the Rossby wave kinetic equation. A generalisation to anisotropic systems was provided by Kuznetsov [59]. Scale invariance is still required but this scale invariance is permitted to be anisotropic. Instead of assuming that the dispersion relation and interaction coefficient are homogeneous functions as in Eq. (71), they are assumed to be bihomogeneous functions which scale differently under rescalings in the x and y directions. The notation is a little clumsy:

$$\omega_{(h_x k_x, h_y k_y)} = h_x^a h_y^b \omega_{(k_x, k_y)} \quad V_{(h_x q_x, h_y q_y)(h_x r_x, h_y r_y)}^{(h_x p_x, h_y p_y)} = h_x^u h_y^v V_{(q_x, q_y)(r_x, r_y)}^{(p_x, p_y)}. \quad (72)$$

In the case of Rossby/drift waves, such anisotropic scale invariance is approximately recovered for zonal motions (wavevectors $\mathbf{k}$, for which $|k_x| \ll |k_y|$) in two limiting cases of very long or very short waves. We now consider these limits in some more detail.

3.3.1. Short wave limit

In this limit we consider $F \rightarrow 0$. Equivalently we consider only waves for which $|\mathbf{k}|^2 \gg F$. All wavelengths are therefore short with respect to the deformation length, $\rho = F^{-1/2}$. This is approximately the situation for mesoscale

motions (~ 10 's to 100 's of km) in the Earth's atmosphere where the deformation length is of order 1000 km. Assuming that $k_x \ll k_y$, the dispersion relation in this limit becomes

$$\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \sim -k_x k_y^{-2}. \quad (73)$$

Applying similar arguments to the nonlinear interaction coefficient, Eq. (64), we find that

$$V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}} \sim \sqrt{|p_x q_x r_x|} (q_y^{-1} + r_y^{-1} - p_y^{-1}). \quad (74)$$

In this limit, the pairs of exponents (a, b) and (u, v) of Eq. (72) take the values $(a, b) = (1, -2)$ and $(u, v) = (\frac{3}{2}, -1)$.

3.3.2. Long wave limit

In this limit we consider $F \rightarrow \infty$ or waves for which $|\mathbf{k}|^2 \ll F$ so that all wavelengths are long with respect to the deformation length. This is approximately the situation for large scale motions in the Earth's oceans where the deformation length is of order 10 's of km or in a large tokamak where the Larmor radius is typically small compared to the scale of the device. In this limit, assuming that $k_x \ll k_y$,

$$\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = -\frac{k_x}{F} \left[1 - \frac{k_x^2 + k_y^2}{F} \right] \approx -\frac{1}{F} \left(k_x - \frac{1}{F} k_x k_y^2 \right).$$

In the kinetic equation, Eq. (63), we can ignore the leading k_x term when this expression is substituted into the frequency resonance condition. This is because the delta function of the x-component of the wavevectors (momentum conservation) ensures that these leading terms vanish. Thus the effective dispersion relation for long waves is

$$\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \sim F^{-2} k_x k_y^2. \quad (75)$$

Applying similar arguments to the nonlinear interaction coefficient, Eq. (64), we find that in the long wave limit

$$V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}} \sim F^{-2} \sqrt{|p_x q_x r_x|} (q_y^3 + r_y^3 - p_y^3). \quad (76)$$

In this limit, the pairs of exponents (a, b) and (u, v) of Eq. (72) take the values $(a, b) = (1, 2)$ and $(u, v) = (\frac{3}{2}, 3)$.

The application of the anisotropic Zakharov-Kraichnan transformations to these two special limits are now summarized. The objective is to find the Kolmogorov-Zakharov spectra of Eq. (63). Readers who wish to delve into these details are advised to first familiarize themselves with how the Zakharov-Kraichnan transformations work in the isotropic case. A pedagogical discussion can be found in [60, 4].

Let us work with the collision integral in the form as written in Eq. (67). The x-components of the wavevectors are thus manifestly positive throughout. Spectra $n_{\mathbf{k}}$ are sought, which make the collision integral equal to zero and which have the form

$$n_{\mathbf{k}} = c k_x^\mu |k_y|^\nu \quad (77)$$

where c is a constant. Substituting this form into Eq. (67), the integrand consists of three terms. The first can be written as

$$\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}} = c^2 |V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}|^2 (p_x q_x r_x)^\mu |p_y q_y r_y|^\nu \left[p_x^{-\mu} |p_y|^{-\nu} - q_x^{-\mu} |q_y|^{-\nu} - r_x^{-\mu} |r_y|^{-\nu} \right] \delta(p_x - q_x - r_x) \delta(p_y - q_y - r_y) \delta(\omega_{\mathbf{p}} - \omega_{\mathbf{q}} - \omega_{\mathbf{r}}). \quad (78)$$

The second and third terms, for $\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{rp}}^{\mathbf{q}}$ and $\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{pq}}^{\mathbf{r}}$ respectively, are written similarly. Now split the integral into three separate integrals. The Zakharov-Kraichnan transformations are changes of variables, $(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{r}) \rightarrow (\mathbf{q}', \mathbf{r}')$, to be applied to the second and third integrals. To the second integral (involving $\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{rp}}^{\mathbf{q}}$), apply the change of variables:

$$\begin{aligned} q_x &= \frac{p_x^2}{q_x'}, & r_x &= \frac{p_x r_x'}{q_x'}, & p_x &= \frac{p_x q_x'}{q_x'}, \\ q_y &= \frac{p_y^2}{q_y'}, & r_y &= \frac{p_y r_y'}{q_y'}, & p_y &= \frac{p_y q_y'}{q_y'}. \end{aligned} \quad (79)$$

Note that the third equation here is a self-evident statement intended to make the mechanism of the transformation clear. To the third integral (involving $\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{pq}}^{\mathbf{r}}$), apply the change of variables:

$$q_x = \frac{p_x q'_x}{r'_x}, \quad r_x = \frac{p_x^2}{r'_x}, \quad p_x = \frac{p_x r'_x}{r'_x}, \quad (80)$$

$$q_y = \frac{p_y q'_y}{r'_y}, \quad r_y = \frac{p_y^2}{r'_y}, \quad p_y = \frac{p_y r'_y}{r'_y}. \quad (81)$$

The Jacobians of these transformations are

$$d\mathbf{q}d\mathbf{r} = \left| \frac{p_x p_y}{q'_x q'_y} \right|^3 d\mathbf{q}'d\mathbf{r}' \quad \text{and} \quad d\mathbf{q}d\mathbf{r} = \left| \frac{p_x p_y}{r'_x r'_y} \right|^3 d\mathbf{q}'d\mathbf{r}'$$

respectively. Using the scaling properties, Eq. (72), of $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}$ one finds that (dropping the primes on the transformed variables) the integrands $\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{rp}}^{\mathbf{q}}$ and $\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{pq}}^{\mathbf{r}}$ are mapped onto $\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}$ with an additional prefactor. Specifically, Eq. (79) applied to the integral of $\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{rp}}^{\mathbf{q}}$ gives

$$\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{rp}}^{\mathbf{q}} d\mathbf{q}d\mathbf{r} = \left(\frac{p_x}{q'_x} \right)^{\alpha} \left| \frac{p_y}{q'_y} \right|^{\beta} \mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}} d\mathbf{q}d\mathbf{r} \quad (82)$$

with $\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}$ given by Eq. (78) and the exponents α and β given by

$$\alpha = a - 2(1 + u + \mu) \quad \text{and} \quad \beta = b - 2(1 + v + \nu). \quad (83)$$

Similarly, Eq. (80) applied to the integral of $\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{pq}}^{\mathbf{r}}$ gives

$$\mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{pq}}^{\mathbf{r}} d\mathbf{q}d\mathbf{r} = \left(\frac{p_x}{r'_x} \right)^{\alpha} \left| \frac{p_y}{r'_y} \right|^{\beta} \mathcal{R}_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}} d\mathbf{q}d\mathbf{r}. \quad (84)$$

Combining Eqs. (78), (82) and (84) and performing a little algebra, for spectra having the form (77), the collision integral can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_0^{\infty} dq_x dr_x \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dq_y dr_y c^2 |V_{\mathbf{qr}}^{\mathbf{p}}|^2 (p_x q_x r_x)^{\mu} |p_y q_y r_y|^{\nu} p_x^{-\alpha} |p_y|^{-\beta} \delta(p_x - q_x - r_x) \delta(p_y - q_y - r_y) \delta(\omega_{\mathbf{p}} - \omega_{\mathbf{q}} - \omega_{\mathbf{r}}) \\ & \times \left[p_x^{-\mu} |p_y|^{-\nu} - q_x^{-\mu} |q_y|^{-\nu} - r_x^{-\mu} |r_y|^{-\nu} \right] \left[p_x^{\alpha} |p_y|^{\beta} - q_x^{\alpha} |q_y|^{\beta} - r_x^{\alpha} |r_y|^{\beta} \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (85)$$

Noting that $\omega_{\mathbf{p}} = p_x^a |p_y|^b$, the exponents of the stationary spectra now become obvious since we simply need to choose the values of x and y so that the quantities in the square brackets correspond to the arguments of either the frequency or x -momentum delta functions. As remarked above there are no cascades associated with the y -momentum as it is not positive definite. There are four possible choices. The first two correspond to equilibrium solutions:

$$\mu = -a, \quad \nu = -b, \quad n_{\mathbf{k}} = c \omega_{\mathbf{k}}^{-1} \quad \text{– equipartition of energy,} \quad (86)$$

$$\mu = -1, \quad \nu = 0, \quad n_{\mathbf{k}} = c k_x^{-1} \quad \text{– equipartition of enstrophy.} \quad (87)$$

(Hereafter it is understood that constant c takes different values in our expressions for different spectra.) The second two are the constant flux KZ solutions and come from choosing either $\alpha = a$ and $\beta = b$ or $\alpha = 1$ and $\beta = 0$ (recall the definition (83) of α and β). These choices give

$$\mu = -(u+1), \quad \nu = -(v+1), \quad n_{\mathbf{k}} = c k_x^{-(u+1)} |k_y|^{-(v+1)} \quad \text{– constant flux of energy,} \quad (88)$$

$$\mu = \frac{a-2u-3}{2}, \quad \nu = \frac{b-2v-2}{2}, \quad n_{\mathbf{k}} = c k_x^{\frac{a-2u-3}{2}} |k_y|^{\frac{b-2v-2}{2}} \quad \text{– constant flux of enstrophy.} \quad (89)$$

With the KZ spectra in hand it is possible to make quantitative estimates of the consistency of the assumption of timescale separation as discussed in Sec. 3.2.1. Generalising the arguments of [30, 55] to anisotropic spectra is straightforward. For a spectrum of the form Eq. (77), one finds from Eqs. (67) and (68):

$$\tau_L \sim k_x^{-a} |k_y|^{-b}, \quad \tau_{NL} \sim k_x^{2u-a+1+\mu} |k_y|^{2v-b+1+\nu}. \quad (90)$$

For the KZ spectra, Eqs. (88) and (89), the ratio of nonlinear to linear timescales scales is:

$$\frac{\tau_L}{\tau_{NL}} \sim k_x^{u-2a} |k_y|^{v-2b} \quad - \text{Energy cascade}, \quad (91)$$

$$\frac{\tau_L}{\tau_{NL}} \sim k_x^{\frac{1}{2}(2u-3a-1)} |k_y|^{\frac{1}{2}(2v-3b-1)} \quad - \text{Enstrophy cascade}. \quad (92)$$

Now returning to the specific case of Rossby/drift waves, inserting the values of a, b, u and v obtained in Sec. 3.3.1 above, it is found that the KZ spectra in the short-wave limit are

$$n_{\mathbf{k}} = c k_x^{-\frac{5}{2}} |k_y|^0 \quad - \text{Energy cascade (short wave limit)}, \quad (93)$$

$$n_{\mathbf{k}} = c k_x^{-\frac{5}{2}} |k_y|^{-1} \quad - \text{Enstrophy cascade (short wave limit)}. \quad (94)$$

These spectra were suggested in [61]. Even earlier, isotropic versions of these spectra were obtained in [62] by a dimensional argument ignoring anisotropy: $k^{-5/2}$ and $k^{-7/2}$ respectively. Referring to Eqs. (91) and (92) above, the ratio τ_L/τ_{NL} for these spectra scales as $k_x^{-1/2} |k_y|^3$ for the energy spectrum and as $k_x^{-1/2} |k_y|^{3/2}$ for the enstrophy spectrum. In both cases, the consistency condition $\tau_L/\tau_{NL} \ll 1$ is maintained only in the limit $k_x \rightarrow \infty$, $|k_y| \rightarrow 0$. This is at odds with the assumption made in Sec. 3.3.1 that this spectrum describes zonal wavenumbers.

Turning to the long wave case, the values of a, b, u and v obtained in Sec. 3.3.2 yield the spectra

$$n_{\mathbf{k}} = c k_x^{-\frac{5}{2}} |k_y|^{-4} \quad - \text{Energy cascade (long wave limit)}, \quad (95)$$

$$n_{\mathbf{k}} = c k_x^{-\frac{5}{2}} |k_y|^{-3} \quad - \text{Enstrophy cascade (long wave limit)}. \quad (96)$$

These spectra were suggested in [63, 64]. The ratio τ_L/τ_{NL} for these spectra scales as $k_x^{-1/2} |k_y|^{-1}$ for the energy spectrum and as $k_x^{-1/2} |k_y|^{-1/2}$ for the enstrophy spectrum. In both cases, the consistency condition $\tau_L/\tau_{NL} \ll 1$ is maintained only in the limit $k_x \rightarrow \infty$, $|k_y| \rightarrow \infty$. This is again in contradiction with the assumption of zonality made in Sec. 3.3.2. The fact that the KZ spectra obtained in both the long and short wave limits fail to preserve the separation of timescales required for the derivation of the wave kinetic equation suggests that these spectra do not provide the correct description of zonal scales. In the next section, another reason as to why one might not expect to find these spectra in practice, will be discussed.

3.4. Nonlocality of the Kolmogorov–Zakharov spectra for Rossby/drift waves

In this section, the important concept of scale locality in the context of turbulent cascades is discussed. A cascade is said to be local if the flux at any given inertial range scale is dominated by interactions with comparable scales. A cascade is non-local if the flux at a given inertial range scale is dominated by interactions with scales at the extremes of the inertial range, typically the forcing and/or dissipation scales. In the wave turbulence literature a distinction is made between stationary and evolutionary locality.

From a physical perspective, the easiest way to understand stationary locality conceptually is to imagine solving the kinetic equation, Eq. (63), with *finite* values for the forcing wavenumber, $\mathbf{k}_f$, and dissipation wavenumber. Having thus obtained the explicit dependence of the stationary spectrum, $n(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_f, \mathbf{k}_d)$, on $\mathbf{k}_f$ and $\mathbf{k}_d$, we can consider what happens when we take the limit $\ln(|\mathbf{k}_f|/|\mathbf{k}_d|) \rightarrow \infty$, corresponding to an infinitely wide inertial range. If $n(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_f, \mathbf{k}_d)$ becomes independent of $\mathbf{k}_f$ and $\mathbf{k}_d$ in this limit then the spectrum is local and universal. If a dependence on $\mathbf{k}_f$ and/or $\mathbf{k}_d$ persists in this limit (one would expect the spectrum either to diverge or to vanish) then the spectrum is nonlocal. Nonlocal cascades are explicitly non-universal since a finite forcing and or/dissipation scale is required. Note that

locality is a property of the solution, $n_{\mathbf{k}}$, of the kinetic equation rather than a property of the nonlinear interaction coefficient, Eq. (64). It is obvious that $V_{\mathbf{q}\mathbf{r}}^{\mathbf{p}}$ allows for interaction between arbitrarily widely separated scales. This does not mean, however, that the resulting turbulent cascades are scale nonlocal. Indeed, in systems such as the CHM equation where multiple cascades occur, it is quite possible for one to be local and the other nonlocal.

It remains to be determined whether or not the KZ spectra obtained in Sec. 3.3 are local. In practice it is not usually possible to solve for the explicit dependence of the spectrum on $\mathbf{k}_f$ and $\mathbf{k}_d$. In fact, the analysis of Sec. 3.3 was predicated on the assumption of locality since we have assumed a universal form, Eq. (77), for the stationary spectra in the limit of an infinite inertial range. If the cascade is local then this assumption is self-consistent and the collision integral will vanish at every value of $\mathbf{k}$ when the KZ-spectrum is substituted into Eq. (67). If not, then the collision integral will diverge when the KZ-spectrum is substituted into Eq. (67). Such a divergence is not inconsistent with the vanishing of Eq. (85) on the Kolmogorov spectrum. This is because the Zakharov-Kraichnan transformations, Eqs. (79) and (80), exchange orders of integration. This can result in a cancellation of divergences and is not justified if the original integral were divergent in the first place. We can therefore check a-posteriori for the locality of the KZ-spectra obtained in Sec. 3.3 by substituting Eqs (88) and (89) into Eq. (67) and determining whether the collision integral is convergent or not.

Evolutionary locality is the property that scale local perturbations to the KZ spectrum evolve in time by interaction solely with comparable scales. By contrast, evolutionary non-locality means that scale-local perturbations evolve in time by interaction with the scales at the extremities of the inertial range. This leads to singular behaviour in time if the inertial range becomes large. The technical linear stability machinery required to test for evolutionary locality is quite sophisticated and can depend on whether the perturbation is an even or an odd function of q_y . Details can be found in [3, 4]. Evolutionary non-locality with respect to the odd perturbations is harmless: it leads to quick decay of the odd perturbations and therefore, reinforcement of the even shape of the spectrum. On the other hand, evolutionary non-locality with respect to the even perturbations is generally assumed to lead to the destruction of the KZ-spectrum through growth of nonlocal perturbations.

Even after passing the locality test, a KZ spectrum may still be unrealisable if the local evolution of its perturbations leads to an instability.

A detailed study of the locality and stability properties of the KZ spectra obtained above for the CHM model in the short and long wave limits was performed by Balk and Nazarenko [65]. This is quite a technical exercise and the results are simply quoted here:

Regime ($k_x \ll k_y $)	Cascade	KZ Spectrum	Stationary locality	Evolutionary locality – even/odd	Stability
Short waves ($ \mathbf{k} ^2 \gg F$),	Energy	$k_x^{-\frac{5}{2}}$	Yes	No/No	–
Short waves ($ \mathbf{k} ^2 \gg F$)	Enstrophy (x-momentum)		No	–	–
Long waves ($ \mathbf{k} ^2 \ll F$)	Energy	$k_x^{-\frac{5}{2}} k_y ^{-4}$	Yes	No/No	–
Long waves ($ \mathbf{k} ^2 \ll F$)	Enstrophy (x-momentum)	$k_x^{-\frac{5}{2}} k_y ^{-3}$	Yes	Yes/No	No

In the table entries with “–” mean that the respective question is irrelevant, e.g. if the spectrum does not satisfy stationary locality it does not make sense to ask about its evolutionary locality, and if it is nonlocal with respect to the even disturbances then it makes no sense to study its stability.

In the above discussions of the KZ spectra, the KZ spectra with the flux of zonestrophy, an extra invariant in the Rossby and drift wave turbulence, has been omitted and will be discussed in section 7. These spectra were found in [66, 67] and soon after (in S.V. Nazarenko’s PhD thesis) they were proven unrealisable in a way very similar to the enstrophy cascade spectra. Namely, in the short-wave limit the KZ spectrum with the flux of zonestrophy does not possess stationary locality, whereas in the long-wave limit it is stationarily local, evolutionally local with respect to the even perturbations, nonlocal with respect to the odd perturbations and unstable.

The lack of evolutionary locality and stability for the KZ spectra coupled with the difficulty in matching the regions of validity of these spectra, $k_x \ll |k_y|$, with the consistency conditions for separation of timescales discussed in Sec. 3.2.1 means that, despite their theoretical elegance, the KZ-spectra are probably not relevant to the turbulence of Rossby/drift waves in practice. Indeed, to the best of our knowledge, there is no experimental or numerical evidence to suggest that any of the spectra obtained in Sec. 3.3 are realisable. It is important to make a distinction however between the consistency of the KZ spectra as solutions of the wave kinetic equation and the consistency of the kinetic equation itself. The problems discussed in this section with the KZ spectra do not mean that Eq. (63) is incorrect but rather that the true solution is something other than the KZ spectrum. Provided that this

alternative solution respects the condition $\tau_L/\tau_{NL} \ll 1$, the wave kinetic theory will still apply. In Sec. 8, a different approach to weakly nonlinear wave kinetics shall be developed, based on the assumption that the turbulence is strongly nonlocal.

4. Low dimensional models of spectral energy transfer

4.1. Triad-based spectral truncations of the CHM equation

The discussion of wave turbulence theory in Sec. 3 was based on a continuous description of the wave field and the energy transfer in a system encompassing an infinite number of degrees of freedom. In this section, the opposite perspective will be taken by discussing models of energy transfer in Rossby/drift wave turbulence with a finite number of degrees of freedom. Two distinct but inter-related ways in which one might arrive at finite dimensional models starting from Eq. (6) are presented. The first involves truncating a discrete spectral representation of Eq. (6) at a finite wavenumber. This generally leads to Galerkin-type models. The second involves projecting the right-hand side of Eq. (6) onto a finite number of triads. For want of a better word, these models will be referred to as triad-based models. In some cases, these finite dimensional models are bona-fide approximations to Eq. (6) and can be compared quantitatively with the full system. This is the case with Galerkin truncations which form the basis of spectral or pseudo-spectral numerical schemes. In other cases, particularly with very low dimensional models, such models are illustrative or paradigmatic in nature and are not usually intended to be used for quantitative prediction. Small triad-based models or predator-prey models are of this nature.

4.1.1. Spectral truncation

Hitherto, it has been assumed that the system was infinite in extent. In practice one is often interested in studying systems with finite spatial extent. For theoretical and numerical studies it is common to consider a finite square domain with periodic boundary conditions on each side. In geophysical fluid dynamics it is common to solve Eq. 6 on the surface of a sphere. In a finite domain, the wavenumber space is discrete rather than continuous and Eqs (11) are replaced by discrete sums. For example, in the case of a bi-periodic box of size $L \times L$, discrete Fourier transforms replace their continuous versions, Eq. (11) and the CHM equation in Fourier space, Eq. (12), is replaced by:

$$\partial_t \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}} = -i\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2} T(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2) \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}_1} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}_2} \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1 - \mathbf{k}_2), \quad (97)$$

where $\mathbf{k} = (k_x, k_y) = (2\pi\mathbf{m}/L, 2\pi\mathbf{n}/L)$ is the wavevector ($\mathbf{m}, \mathbf{n} \in \mathbb{Z}$). Modulo the multiplicative factor of $2\pi/L$, the wavevector now takes values on discrete values on the integer lattice, $\mathbf{k} = (n, m) \in \mathbb{Z}^2$. In the case of Rossby waves on a sphere, it is more appropriate to represent the wave field in terms of spherical harmonics:

$$\psi(\theta, \varphi, t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=-n}^n \hat{\psi}_{mn}(t) Y_{mn}(\theta, \varphi), \quad (98)$$

where θ and φ are the polar angles on a sphere. The spherical case differs from the bi-periodic case in two important respects. Firstly, the wavevector, (m, n) , in the spherical case is not in $\mathbb{Z}^2$ but in the smaller set $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $m \in \mathbb{Z}$ with $|m| \leq n$. Secondly, the dispersion relation is slightly different from Eq. (10):

$$\omega_{mn} = -\frac{m}{n(n+1) + F}. \quad (99)$$

For a pedagogical discussion of the spherical case, see [68]. Considering the bi-periodic case, introducing a spectral cut-off, N (assumed even), such that $|n| \leq N/2$ and $|m| \leq N/2$, results in a $(N+1) \times (N+1)$ dimensional set of ordinary differential equations for the $\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}}(t)$. This is the departure point for all spectral and pseudo-spectral numerical algorithms. The important point for the purposes of much of the discussion below, is that the wavenumber, $\mathbf{k}$, is now a discrete, integer-valued vector.

4.1.2. Triad-based truncation

Another approach to spectral truncation, which applies equally well regardless of whether the wavevector space is discrete or continuous, is based on the fact that, when written in Fourier space, waves interact in triads. To understand energy transfer within and between triads, one can project the equation onto some preselected set of triads of interest. Here “project” means that triads appearing on the right-hand side of Eq. (12) which are not members of this preselected set of triads are discarded, for example by setting the corresponding interaction coefficient, $T_{\mathbf{q}\mathbf{r}}^{\mathbf{p}}$, to zero. Unlike the Galerkin methods described above, this is usually not a controlled approximation to the original system since one does not know a priori that the triads which are thrown away are negligible in any sense. Nevertheless it will be shown below that, under some circumstances, truncations involving even very small

numbers of triads can capture certain aspects of the full dynamics. If the number of triads kept in this procedure is progressively increased, one might expect the truncated model to be a progressively better approximation to the original system.

The simplest triad-based truncation involves projecting onto a single triad, denoted as $(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{r})$. Here $\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{r}$. The starting point is Eq. (12). The following discussion applies equally well to Eqs (17) or (21) or to the EHM model with the interaction coefficient given by Eq. (22). We assume that $\hat{\psi}_k(t)$ is supported only on the selected triad $(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{r})$:

$$\hat{\psi}_k(t) = \psi_p(t) \delta_p^k + \psi_q(t) \delta_q^k + \psi_r(t) \delta_r^k + \psi_p(t)^* \delta_{-p}^k + \psi_q(t)^* \delta_{-q}^k + \psi_r(t)^* \delta_{-r}^k.$$

The inclusion of the complex conjugate terms is necessary because of the fact that $\psi(\mathbf{x}, t)$ is real. This form is now substituted into Eq. (12). When all the terms proportional to δ_p^k , δ_q^k and δ_r^k are gathered together it results in

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\psi_p}{dt} &= i\omega_p \psi_p + 2T_{qr}^p \psi_q \psi_r, \\ \frac{d\psi_q}{dt} &= i\omega_q \psi_q + 2T_{rp}^q \psi_p \psi_r^*, \\ \frac{d\psi_r}{dt} &= i\omega_r \psi_r + 2T_{pq}^r \psi_p \psi_q^*. \end{aligned} \quad (100)$$

Some care is required with the signs of the interaction coefficients in these equations. Referring to Eq. (13), the sign of the interaction coefficient, T_{qr}^p , determined by the numerator $(\mathbf{q} \times \mathbf{r})_z (q^2 - r^2) = N_{qr}^p$. Bearing in mind that $\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{r}$, it is easy to show that $N_{qr}^p + N_{rp}^q + N_{pq}^r = 0$. Therefore, two of the coefficients in Eqs (100) must be positive and the other negative or vice versa. By symmetry, the second and third equations should share the same sign. We will therefore assume that $T_{qr}^p < 0$, $T_{rp}^q > 0$ and $T_{pq}^r > 0$ (if this is not the case, we can reverse the signs by $\psi \rightarrow -\psi$). Assuming that the interaction coefficient does not vanish, let us now make the following change of variables:

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_p &= \frac{1}{2} |T_{rp}^q|^{-\frac{1}{2}} |T_{pq}^r|^{-\frac{1}{2}} e^{i\omega_p t} A_p, \\ \psi_q &= \frac{1}{2} |T_{qr}^p|^{-\frac{1}{2}} |T_{pq}^r|^{-\frac{1}{2}} e^{i\omega_q t} A_q, \\ \psi_r &= \frac{1}{2} |T_{qr}^p|^{-\frac{1}{2}} |T_{rp}^q|^{-\frac{1}{2}} e^{i\omega_r t} A_r. \end{aligned} \quad (101)$$

The result is the very simple dynamical system

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dA_p}{dt} &= -A_q A_r e^{-i\Delta_{qr}^p t}, \\ \frac{dA_q}{dt} &= A_p A_r^* e^{i\Delta_{qr}^p t}, \\ \frac{dA_r}{dt} &= A_p A_q^* e^{i\Delta_{qr}^p t}, \end{aligned} \quad (102)$$

where $\Delta_{qr}^p = \omega_p - \omega_q - \omega_r$. These equations are known as the 3-wave equations or the 3-mode truncation (3MT). They describe the nonlinear dynamics of a single triad in isolation. Of particular interest is the case in which the triad is resonant so that $\Delta_{qr}^p = 0$. The result is the resonant 3-wave equations:

$$\frac{dA_p}{dt} = -A_q A_r, \quad \frac{dA_q}{dt} = A_p A_r^*, \quad \frac{dA_r}{dt} = A_p A_q^*. \quad (103)$$

These equations have been derived in many different contexts including nonlinear optics [69], geophysical fluid dynamics [70], plasma physics [71], electronics [72] and mechanics [73]. They are a paradigmatic example of resonant mode coupling in nonlinear systems with quadratic nonlinearity.

One can do the same thing with multiple triads although the process of writing down the corresponding dynamical system and identifying the number of independent interaction coefficients rapidly becomes quite cumbersome. For example, in Sec. 5 extensive use will be made of a special triad-based truncation containing four modes which results from considering the pair of triads, $(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}_-)$ and $(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_+, -\mathbf{q})$ where $\mathbf{p}_\pm = \mathbf{p} \pm \mathbf{q}$. As in the case of the 3-mode truncation, it is convenient to introduce interaction representation variables $\Psi_k(t) = \psi_k(t) e^{i\omega_k t}$. The resulting equations are

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_t \Psi_p &= T(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{r}_-) \Psi_q \Psi_{p_-} e^{i\Delta_- t} + T(\mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}_+) \Psi_q^* \Psi_{p_-} e^{i\Delta_+ t}, \\ \partial_t \Psi_q &= T(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{p}_-) \Psi_p \Psi_{p_-}^* e^{-i\Delta_- t} + T(\mathbf{q}, -\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_+) \Psi_p^* \Psi_{p_+} e^{i\Delta_+ t}, \\ \partial_t \Psi_{p_-} &= T(\mathbf{r}_-, \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{q}) \Psi_p \Psi_q^* e^{-i\Delta_- t}, \\ \partial_t \Psi_{p_+} &= T(\mathbf{p}_+, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) \Psi_p \Psi_q e^{-i\Delta_+ t}. \end{aligned} \quad (104)$$

where $\Delta_{\pm} = \omega_{\mathbf{p}} \pm \omega_{\mathbf{q}} - \omega_{\mathbf{p} \pm \mathbf{q}}$ where $\omega_{\mathbf{p} \pm \mathbf{q}} = \omega(\mathbf{p} \pm \mathbf{q})$. Eqs (104) will be referred to as the four mode truncation (4MT) of the CHM/EHM models. The dynamics of some special systems constructed from two resonant triads are explored in detail in [74, 75].

4.2. Interplay between resonant manifolds and wavevector quantisation in finite systems

In an infinite system where wave modes are indexed by a continuous wavevector, we have argued in Sec. 3 that the theory of weakly nonlinear wave turbulence becomes asymptotically exact in the weakly nonlinear limit. For finite systems, the discreteness of wavevectors leads to some subtleties. In a finite system, there is a minimum spacing, Δk , between wavevectors which can be set equal to 1 provided we are not worried about how to take the continuous limit. We shall focus on the case of a bi-periodic box in which $\mathbf{k} = (n, m) \in \mathbb{Z}^2$ and the dispersion relation is given by Eq. (10). The discussion is equally applicable to the spherical case, in which $\mathbf{k} = (n, m)$ indexes the spherical harmonics and the dispersion relation is given by Eq. (99). When the wavevectors are integer valued, then the resonance conditions, Eqs (60), become a problem of Diophantine analysis (the search for integer-valued solutions to polynomial equations in several variables). For example, in the case of Rossby/drift waves in a periodic box, if we fix $\mathbf{p} = (n, m) \in \mathbb{Z}^2$, we need to find $\mathbf{q} = (u, v) \in \mathbb{Z}^2$ such that

$$\frac{n}{n^2 + m^2 + F} = \frac{u}{u^2 + v^2 + F} + \frac{n - u}{(n - u)^2 + (m - v)^2 + F}. \quad (105)$$

Such Diophantine equations have far fewer solutions than their real-valued counterparts and it is generally quite difficult to find them. Thus, in finite systems, exact resonances can be quite rare. Indeed, for certain dispersion relations, it can be shown that there are no resonant triads with integer-valued wavevectors at all. This occurs, for example, for capillary waves [76]. The situation for Rossby/drift waves is not so extreme. A complete enumeration of all integer-valued solutions of Eq. (105) with $F = 0$ was recently provided in [77]. An efficient algorithm for the spherical case of Eq. (99), again with $F = 0$, was provided in [78]. For finite F , solutions exist only if F is a rational number. To the best of our knowledge, the problem of finding the full set of solutions in the case of finite values of F remains open. The conclusion of these analyses is that although there are many integer-valued resonances for Rossby waves, such triads are nevertheless sparse in the space of real-valued resonances.

A consequence of this sparseness is that, in discrete systems, exact resonant triads often exist in isolation or in finite groups of triads. These groups are referred to as resonant clusters. Two triads belong to the same cluster if they share at least one common mode. If it were truly the case that only resonant interactions are important then each such cluster would evolve independently of all the others. A triad, $(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{r})$, is said to be isolated if it does not share any common modes with any other resonant triads. For the dispersion relation Eq. (105) with $F = 0$, the lowest wavenumber isolated triad which does not exhibit any special symmetries is $\mathbf{p} = (9, 23)$, $\mathbf{q} = (1, -11)$, $\mathbf{r} = (8, 34)$. Clusters consisting of two resonant triads may have single mode in common or may have two modes in common. These are referred to as “butterflies” and “kites” respectively owing to their appearance when drawn as graphs. The dynamics of butterflies and kites have been studied in some detail in [79]. Small clusters have been suggested as a possible explanation of the unusual periods of certain observed atmospheric oscillations [74].

The question in the context of turbulence is whether there exist large clusters capable of distributing energy over a large range of scales in a discrete system. Energy transfer in such clusters is referred to as finite dimensional wave turbulence. For the dispersion relation (99), for Rossby waves on a sphere with $F = 0$, such a large exactly resonant cluster has been shown to exist numerically [80]. For Eq. (105) with $F = 0$ exactly resonant clusters containing several hundreds of modes were found in [77]. For Eq. (105) with finite F the question of classification of resonant clusters is unknown. Numerical explorations in [77] indicate, however, that for general values of F large exactly resonant clusters are rare.

A consequence of the absence or rarity of large exactly resonant clusters in discrete systems is that it is often necessary to rely on approximate resonances to account for energy transfer. Approximate resonance is possible due to the phenomenon known as nonlinear resonance broadening. This is an effect whereby the frequency of a wave acquires a correction to its linear value which depends on the amplitude. The origin of resonance broadening has already been observed in the discussion of the anharmonic oscillator in Sec. 3.1.2. Eq. (54) shows that the effect of nonlinearity is to modify the frequency by a weakly amplitude-dependent correction. The same effect happens in a statistical sense in wave turbulence and results in a frequency modification which depends on the spectrum, $n_{\mathbf{k}}$. Explicit formulae for nonlinear frequency modification and further references can be found in [30] (see Eq. 2.25 of this reference in particular). As a result of this nonlinear frequency modification, triads which are not exactly in resonance can then interact at finite amplitude if the frequency mismatch is less than this correction. Such triads are known as quasi-resonant triads and satisfy the broadened resonance conditions

$$\begin{cases} \mathbf{k}_3 = \mathbf{k}_1 + \mathbf{k}_2, \\ |\omega(\mathbf{k}_3) - \omega(\mathbf{k}_1) - \omega(\mathbf{k}_2)| \leq \Delta, \end{cases} \quad (106)$$

where Δ is a characteristic value for the resonance broadening taken to be positive. Although Eq. (106) provides only a kinematic description of resonance broadening, the analogous dynamical effect is strikingly visible in linear stability analyses of weakly nonlinear waves [81, 82] where it is found that the set of unstable perturbations lie in a neighbourhood around the set of exactly resonant perturbations. See also Fig. 5 of Sec. 5. The set of quasi-resonant modes is often pictured as a “thickened” or broadened

Figure 2. Shaded regions correspond to the resonant set defined by Eq. (106) with $\mathbf{k}_3 = (1, 0)$, $F = 0$ for different values of Δ . The exactly resonant manifold is the red solid line.

version of the exactly resonant manifold. The structure of this set as a function of the detuning, Δ , can be found by finding the boundaries given by the pair of curves

$$\omega(\mathbf{k}_3) - \omega(\mathbf{k}_1) - \omega(\mathbf{k}_3 - \mathbf{k}_1) = \Delta, \quad (107)$$

$$\omega(\mathbf{k}_3) - \omega(\mathbf{k}_1) - \omega(\mathbf{k}_3 - \mathbf{k}_1) = -\Delta. \quad (108)$$

The details can be found in [83]. The structure of the quasis resonant set for the dispersion relation (10) is shown for a range of values of Δ in Fig. 2. It is seen that the set becomes quite complicated for larger values of Δ . In particular it is found that although the quasis resonant set does indeed look like a “thickened” version of the exact resonant curve for small values of Δ , it actually becomes unbounded for a finite value of Δ . For weakly nonlinear systems, the parameter Δ is expected to be small since amplitudes are small. It is shown in [83], however, that even for arbitrarily small Δ , it is possible to find resonant curves for which the quasis resonant set becomes unbounded. This is related to the fact that for the dispersion relation (10), the resonant curves themselves are unbounded for zonal modes (see Fig. 1).

The importance of quasis resonant interactions is strikingly illustrated by the case of capillary wave turbulence in a bi-periodic box. It has already been remarked that for this system there are no exact resonances. Direct numerical simulations illustrate that the cascade of energy to small scales is entirely absent when the level of nonlinearity is sufficiently small. This phenomenon has been termed “frozen turbulence” [84, 85, 86]. As the nonlinearity is increased the resonance broadening eventually becomes larger than the frequency mismatches, caused by the fact that the wavevectors are forced to lie on an integer-valued lattice. At this point, the cascade is able to proceed. It can be inferred from these results that quasis resonant interactions are essential in “linking up” isolated triads and clusters to form conduits for spectral energy transfer in finite-dimensional turbulence when sufficiently large exactly resonant clusters are absent.

4.3. Nonlinear dynamics of resonant triads

In this section we return to the resonant 3-wave Eqs (103), and summarize some results about their solutions which will be useful later. Firstly, we note that Eqs (103) are a Hamiltonian system. They can be summarized as

$$i \frac{dA_{\mathbf{k}}}{dt} = \frac{dH}{dA_{\mathbf{k}}^*}, \quad \text{where } \mathbf{k} \in \{\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{r}\} \quad (109)$$

and

$$H = i [A_{\mathbf{q}}^* A_{\mathbf{r}}^* A_{\mathbf{p}} - A_{\mathbf{q}} A_{\mathbf{r}} A_{\mathbf{p}}^*] = 2 \operatorname{Im} [A_{\mathbf{q}} A_{\mathbf{r}} A_{\mathbf{p}}^*]. \quad (110)$$

The Hamiltonian, H , is obviously conserved. It is easy to check that, in addition, Eq. (109) conserves the quantities

$$I_1 = |A_{\mathbf{p}}|^2 + |A_{\mathbf{q}}|^2 \quad \text{and} \quad |A_{\mathbf{p}}|^2 + |A_{\mathbf{r}}|^2, \quad (111)$$

which are often referred to as the Manley-Rowe invariants following their application in electronics [72]. To solve Eqs (103), one introduces phase and amplitude variables as follows:

$$A_{\mathbf{k}}(t) = C_{\mathbf{k}}(t) e^{i\theta_{\mathbf{k}}(t)}, \quad \text{where } \mathbf{k} \in \{\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{r}\}.$$

Upon substitution into Eqs (103) and equating real and imaginary parts, the three complex equations are replaced by the following six real equations:

$$\dot{C}_{\mathbf{q}} = C_{\mathbf{p}} C_{\mathbf{r}} \cos \varphi \quad \dot{C}_{\mathbf{r}} = C_{\mathbf{p}} C_{\mathbf{q}} \cos \varphi \quad \dot{C}_{\mathbf{p}} = -C_{\mathbf{q}} C_{\mathbf{r}} \cos \varphi, \quad (112)$$

$$\dot{\theta}_{\mathbf{q}} = -\frac{C_{\mathbf{p}} C_{\mathbf{r}}}{C_{\mathbf{q}}} \sin \varphi \quad \dot{\theta}_{\mathbf{r}} = -\frac{C_{\mathbf{p}} C_{\mathbf{q}}}{C_{\mathbf{r}}} \sin \varphi \quad \dot{\theta}_{\mathbf{p}} = -\frac{C_{\mathbf{q}} C_{\mathbf{r}}}{C_{\mathbf{p}}} \sin \varphi, \quad (113)$$

where $\varphi(t) = \theta_{\mathbf{q}}(t) + \theta_{\mathbf{r}}(t) - \theta_{\mathbf{p}}(t)$ is called the dynamical phase [75]. Notice that the right-hand sides of the equations for the phases depend only on the dynamical phase, φ , and on the amplitudes, $C_{\mathbf{k}}$. The individual $\theta_{\mathbf{k}}$ s do not appear. Therefore, if the $C_{\mathbf{k}}$ s and the dynamical phase were known, one could reconstruct all the phases by direct integration from Eqs (113). This suggests to write an evolution equation for φ :

$$\dot{\varphi} = -C_{\mathbf{p}} C_{\mathbf{q}} C_{\mathbf{r}} \left(\frac{1}{C_{\mathbf{q}}^2} + \frac{1}{C_{\mathbf{r}}^2} - \frac{1}{C_{\mathbf{p}}^2} \right) \sin \varphi. \quad (114)$$

The system can be solved completely by solving Eqs (112) and (114): it possesses only 4 independent degrees of freedom rather than the six which one might expect naively. Since three conserved quantities H , I_1 and I_2 have already been identified, it is clear that Eqs (103) are completely integrable. The identification of the number of conserved quantities and the number of independent

degrees of freedom for more complicated resonant clusters is a nontrivial task which shall be discussed in more detail in Sec. 7. In terms of the amplitudes and dynamical phase, the conserved quantities are

$$H = 2 C_p C_q C_r \sin \varphi \Rightarrow \sin \varphi = \frac{H}{2 C_p C_q C_r}, \quad (115)$$

$$I_1 = C_p^2 + C_q^2 \Rightarrow C_q = \sqrt{I_1 - C_p^2}, \quad (116)$$

$$I_2 = C_p^2 + C_r^2 \Rightarrow C_r = \sqrt{I_2 - C_p^2}. \quad (117)$$

To solve the problem, we use these equations to write a single equation for C_p^2 . Multiplying the first of Eqs (112) by C_p one obtains

$$C_p \dot{C}_p = \frac{1}{2} \frac{dC_p^2}{dt} = -C_p C_q C_r \cos \varphi.$$

Squaring and defining $u = C_p^2$ yields

$$\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{du}{dt} \right)^2 = 2 u C_q^2 C_r^2 \cos^2 \varphi = 2 u (I_1 - u) (I_2 - u) \left(1 - \frac{H^2}{4 u (I_1 - u) (I_2 - u)} \right),$$

where Eqs (115), (116) and (117) have been used. Thus the problem has been reduced to that of a particle moving in a potential well:

$$\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{du}{dt} \right)^2 - V(u) = E, \quad (118)$$

where

$$V(u) = 2 u (I_1 - u) (I_2 - u) \quad \text{and} \quad E = -\frac{H^2}{2}.$$

The general solution of Eq. (118) can be written down in terms of elliptic functions (see for example [87]). Here one particularly simple special case is pointed out, which occurs when $H = 0$ and $I_1 = I_2 = I$. In this case, Eq. (118) can be rearranged to give a separable equation which can be easily solved:

$$\frac{du}{dt} = 2(I - u) \sqrt{u} \Rightarrow \frac{du}{(I - u) \sqrt{u}} = 2 dt \Rightarrow u(t) = I \tanh^2 \left[\sqrt{I} (t - t_0) \right].$$

This gives the following expressions for the amplitudes (setting the reference time, $t_0 = 0$):

$$C_p^2(t) = I \tanh^2 \left[\sqrt{I} t \right] \quad C_q(t) = C_r(t) = I (1 - \tanh^2 \left[\sqrt{I} t \right]). \quad (119)$$

This solution is plotted in Fig. 3. It describes a situation in which all of the energy is in mode **p** at $t = -\infty$ with modes **q** and **r** infinitesimally small. The latter two grow exponentially by absorbing energy from mode **p**. This represents an *instability* of the mode **p**. This instability is known as the resonant decay instability [71]. From the dynamical systems perspective, the resonant decay instability corresponds to a homoclinic orbit of the system (103): maximum energy exchange occurs at $t = 0$ and the system subsequently returns to its initial configuration as time goes to $+\infty$. Similar homoclinic orbits appear in connection with the modulational instability in Sec. 5. It has already been mentioned that triad-based truncations are not necessarily good approximations to the original system. If a triad or cluster is isolated and the level of nonlinearity is sufficiently low, then the system of equations (103) can track the solution of the full PDE quite accurately over reasonable timescales. This is illustrated in Fig. 4. The numerical solution of the full CHM equation using a pseudospectral code is computed for an initial condition localised on the isolated exactly resonant triad $\mathbf{p} = (9, 23)$, $\mathbf{q} = (1, -11)$, $\mathbf{r} = (8, 34)$ mentioned above with a Rossby number of $M = 0.1$. This solution is compared with the solution in Eq. (119) of the 3-wave equations (suitably rescaled according to Eqs (101) to recover the primitive variables). The left panel shows an initial condition corresponding to the decay instability. It is clear that the full system is well described by the solution of the triad equations for some period of time significantly longer than the timescale of the instability itself. The right panel shows the oscillatory behaviour which is typical of generic initial conditions. Again, the solution of the triad equations tracks the full system very well for many periods.

To close this discussion of the nonlinear dynamics of resonant triads, note that variations of the 3-wave equations can be analyzed using modifications of the methods discussed above. The case of a single triad with external forcing is analysed in [88]. An analogue of Eqs (103) for systems with cubic nonlinearity in which modes interact in quartets is discussed in [69]. The non-resonant case, Eqs (100) is discussed in [89]. Such resonant wave interactions have been proposed to play a role in the spatial spreading of drift wave turbulence in tokamaks [90]. Recent work by Bustamante et al. has identified a new mechanism for spectral energy transfer among non-resonant triads in which the nonlinear oscillation frequency of one triad is of the same order as the precession frequency of a second triad [91]. They referred to such interactions as nonlinear triad precession resonances. Nonlinear resonance provides a mechanism for excitation of modes which are not members of the resonant set.

Figure 3. Plot of the solution, Eq. (119) of the resonant 3-wave Eqs (103).

Figure 4. Comparison of the solution of the 3-wave equations, Eqs (103), (solid lines) with a numerical solution of the full CHM equation (symbols) for an initial condition supported on a single, isolated and exactly resonant triad. Left panel shows an initial condition corresponding to the resonant decay instability (c.f. Eqs 119). The right panel shows the oscillatory dynamics which are typical of a generic initial condition.

4.4. Predator-Prey models of wave-zonal flow interaction

To conclude this section on low-dimensional models of Rossby/drift wave turbulence, a brief discussion is given on a different type of model known as the predator-prey model [92, 93, 14]. A detailed discussion can be found in [14]. The predator-prey model was introduced [92] as a conceptual model of the self-regulating interaction between wave turbulence and zonal flows in tokamaks, a topic which will be explored in much greater detail in Sec. 8. The conceptual setting is a system in which there is a primary instability, such as the drift dissipative or ITG instability, which generates wave turbulence at small scales. There is also the potential to generate a larger scale zonal flow which can grow by extracting energy from the small scale turbulence via the eddy shearing mechanism [94, 95]. The intensity of the small scale turbulence is denoted by $N(t)$ and the intensity of the zonal flow is denoted by $U(t)$. The model equations for the dynamics are

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = \gamma N - \alpha_1 N^2 - \sigma U N, \quad (120)$$

$$\frac{dU}{dt} = \sigma U N - \alpha_2 U - \alpha_{NL}(U) U. \quad (121)$$

Here γ is the growth rate of the primary instability and σ is the strength of the shearing effect which exchanges energy between the turbulence and the zonal flows. This describes a nonlocal interaction between small scale turbulence and a large scale flow. The terms with α are all damping terms of some kind. In the second term in Eq. (120), α_1 describes the damping of turbulence at the instability scale due to scale-local eddy-eddy interactions transferring energy to other scales. This can be thought of as the cascade term. In Eq. (121), the term with α_2 describes collisional damping of the large scale flow and in the final term $\alpha_{NL}(U)$ is intended to model nonlinear effects which can lead to damping of the large scale flow. Some physical estimates of the parameters of the model can be found in table 1 of [92]. In the simplest case, one can simply take $\alpha_{NL}(U) = \alpha_3 U$ where α_3 is a constant. In this case, in addition to the trivial fixed point $(0, 0)$, the physically relevant fixed points, (N_*, U_*) , of Eqs (120) and (121) are

$$P_1 = \left(\frac{\gamma}{\alpha_1}, 0 \right), \quad (122)$$

$$P_2 = \left(\frac{\alpha_3 \gamma + \alpha_2 \sigma}{\alpha_1 \alpha_3 + \sigma^2}, \frac{\gamma \sigma - \alpha_1 \alpha_2}{\alpha_1 \alpha_3 + \sigma^2} \right). \quad (123)$$

The first fixed point corresponds to a state in which there is no large scale flow ($U = 0$) and the turbulence saturates due to a balance of the instability growth and the local cascade process. The second fixed point, which becomes physically meaningful when the instability growth rate becomes high enough, $\gamma > (\alpha_1 \alpha_2)/\sigma$, describes a state with a large scale flow existing in balance with small scale turbulence. The saturation level is set by a combination of the energy input from the instability, the shear effect and the damping. The fixed point P_1 is interpreted as corresponding to the L-mode and P_2 as corresponding to the H-mode. A stability analysis of the full parameter space is quite complicated. In [92], the nonlinear damping of the zonal flow was neglected and it was shown that P_1 is stable for $\gamma < (\alpha_1 \alpha_2)/\sigma$ and P_2 is stable for $\gamma > (\alpha_1 \alpha_2)/\sigma$. When nonlinear damping is included, limit cycle solutions become possible [93] in which the large scale flow exhibits periodic growth and decay.

Predator prey models like Eqs (120) and (121), although comparable in complexity to the 3-mode truncation of the CHM equation, Eqs (103) described above, are therefore quite different in their structure and interpretation. The triad equations have the advantage of being directly derived from the underlying PDE but, having no free parameters, do not exhibit any bifurcations. With the exception of the homoclinic orbit, Eq. (119), the solutions of the 3-wave equations always exhibit periodic oscillations. The predator-model on the other hand, while is difficult to obtain directly from an underlying PDE (which in many plasma regimes would not be the CHM equation anyway), contains a rich phenomenology capable of providing a paradigmatic model of how the L-H transition works. In Sec. 8, a model based on nonlocal wave turbulence (and is thus rooted in the CHM equation) which captures certain aspects of the predator-prey phenomenology within the context of wave kinetics will be described.

This section is brought to a close by mentioning a final class of low dimensional models which can be thought of as intermediate between predator-prey models and large triad-based truncations. These are the so-called shell models. Shell models describe the energy exchange between ranges of wavenumbers grouped together. The interactions between the shells are obtained from phenomenological arguments constrained by symmetry considerations. Such models enjoyed a period of popularity in hydrodynamic turbulence (see the review [96] which did not extend to the wave turbulence literature. One of the few exceptions is a shell model of drift wave turbulence [97] which has recently been used to obtain a prediction for the isotropized spectrum of drift wave turbulence which seems to be in reasonable agreement with some observations.

5. Modulational Instability: linear theory

Since monochromatic waves of arbitrary amplitude are exact solutions of the CHM Eq. (1), it is natural to study their stability. In this section we will consider a particular type of instability known as modulational instability (MI). Modulational instability is

the name given to a process whereby a monochromatic wave, which we shall refer to as the carrier wave, can become unstable when its amplitude is modulated by a long wavelength perturbation. When modulational instability occurs, the modulation grows by extracting energy from the carrier wave. Situations in which the wavelength of the modulation is very much greater than the wavelength of the carrier wave are of particular interest because in these situations, the modulational instability provides a very efficient mechanism for transferring energy from small scales to large. In the language of Sec. 3.4, modulational instability is an example of a scale-nonlocal process. Modulational instability is a very generic type of instability in the theory of nonlinear waves which has been widely studied at least since the seminal work on the subject by Benjamin and Feir. We shall focus on the particular case of the CHM equation. Like in the Benjamin-Feir instability, the most unstable disturbance in CHM is actually not much longer than the carrier wave. However, we will ignore this aspect of absence of scale separation and keep using the term modulational instability as it is most commonly used for this process in the current literature. There has been a resurgence of interest in the MI in plasma and GFD applications in recent years [14, 98, 99, 100, 18, 101, 82, 102]. This is related to the fact that MI has been recognized as a natural mechanism for initiating the formation of zonal flows, i.e., zonation.

The Rossby wave stability problem was first formulated and analyzed in the geophysical context by Lorenz [103] and Gill [40] in the early 1970s. The analytical study of Gill [40] in particular was very thorough and complete with virtually all important theoretical questions arising in the linear theory answered. A nonlinear analytical theory of MI for the CHM model was developed by Manin and Nazarenko [98] using a scale separation technique. Linear MI theory for EHM was first considered [101] using a scale separation technique similar to that of Manin and Nazarenko [98]. Recently, both linear and nonlinear MI theory within the CHM model was thoroughly revisited and a detailed numerical study of the nonlinear MI development was carried out [82]. In a follow-up paper [102], a similar study was performed for the EHM model.

Below we will overview and summarize these studies. In the formulation of the problem described below, we shall treat the linear theory of the MI as an initial value problem. That is to say that at an initial moment in time we assume that there is already a carrier wave in the system with wavevector $\mathbf{p}$ and amplitude Ψ_0 which is subject to a small perturbation having wavevector, $\mathbf{q}$. With reference to our choice of non-dimensionalisation discussed in Sec. 2.1, we shall take the characteristic wave amplitude to be given by Ψ_0 and the characteristic length scale to be $L = p^{-1}$. In keeping with the notation of [40, 82], the Rossby number, Eq. (7), is then:

$$M = \frac{\Psi_0 p^3}{\beta}. \quad (124)$$

Although the nonlinear term in Eq. (1) vanishes for a monochromatic carrier wave, it is correct to think nevertheless of M as a measure of nonlinearity in the MI evolution of the of the *perturbed* carrier wave.

The essential dynamics of the MI in the CHM model can be described in terms of the coupling of four modes having wavevectors $\mathbf{p}$ (the carrier wave), $\mathbf{q}$ (the perturbation) and $\mathbf{p}_\pm = \mathbf{p} \pm \mathbf{q}$ (the “sideband” modes). For the purposes of linear stability analysis, the dynamics of these four modes will be described using the four-mode truncation, Eqs (104), introduced in Sec. 4.1.2. Strictly speaking, these four modes are coupled to other modes and do not form a closed system. Indeed, even the linear problem only strictly closes with the inclusion of all the satellites $\pm \mathbf{q} + m\mathbf{p}$ where m is an integer [40]. However, in considering the linear instability it is traditional to truncate the system to the four modes only with a justification that the higher-order satellites are less excited in the linear eigenvectors, which turns out to be a very good approximation for weak primary waves and holds quite well for strong ones.

5.1. Linear dynamics of modulations

We begin from the linearisation of Eq. (12) about the pure carrier wave solution. We introduce the vector notation, $\Psi = (\Psi_{\mathbf{p}}, \Psi_{\mathbf{q}}, \Psi_{\mathbf{p}_+}, \Psi_{\mathbf{p}_-})$. A monochromatic primary wave is given by $\Psi_0 = (\Psi_0, 0, 0, 0)$ where Ψ_0 is a complex constant representing the initial amplitude of the primary wave i.e. $\Psi_0 = \Psi_{\mathbf{p}}|_{t=0}$ and is an exact solution of Eq. (12). The idea is to determine how stable this solution is to small perturbations, comprised of modes $\mathbf{q}$, $\mathbf{p}_+$ and $\mathbf{p}_-$, by taking $\Psi = \Psi_0 + \epsilon \Psi_1$ where $\Psi_1 = (0, \tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}}, \tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+}, \tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_-})$. Linearising Eqs (104) for the 4MT model at first order in ϵ gives

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_t \tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}} &= T(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{p}_-) \Psi_0 \tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_-}^* e^{-i\Delta_- t} + T(\mathbf{q}, -\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_+) \Psi_0^* \tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+} e^{i\Delta_+ t}, \\ \partial_t \tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+}^* &= T(\mathbf{p}_+, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) \Psi_0 \tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}} e^{-i\Delta_+ t}, \\ \partial_t \tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_-}^* &= T(\mathbf{p}_-, \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{q}) \Psi_0^* \tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}} e^{i\Delta_- t}. \end{aligned} \quad (125)$$

Now solutions are sought in the form:

$$\tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}}(t) = A_{\mathbf{q}} e^{-i\Omega_{\mathbf{q}} t}, \quad \tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+}(t) = A_{\mathbf{p}_+} e^{-i\Omega_{\mathbf{p}_+} t}, \quad \tilde{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_-}(t) = A_{\mathbf{p}_-} e^{-i\Omega_{\mathbf{p}_-} t}, \quad (126)$$

which requires for consistency that

$$\Omega_{\mathbf{p}_+} = \Omega_{\mathbf{q}} + \Delta_+ \quad \text{and} \quad \Omega_{\mathbf{p}_-}^* = -\Omega_{\mathbf{q}} + \Delta_-. \quad (127)$$

Writing Eqs (125) in matrix format gives,

$$\begin{pmatrix} i\Omega_q & T(\mathbf{q}, -\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_+) \Psi_0^* & T(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{p}_-) \Psi_0 \\ T(\mathbf{p}_+, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) \Psi_0 & i(\Omega_q + \Delta_+) & 0 \\ T(\mathbf{p}_-, \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{q}) \Psi_0^* & 0 & -i(-\Omega_q + \Delta_-) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A_q \\ A_{\mathbf{p}_+} \\ A_{\mathbf{p}_-}^* \end{pmatrix} = 0, \quad (128)$$

and setting the determinant of the 3×3 matrix to zero, gives a cubic expression for the dispersion relation of the modulation frequency Ω_q ,

$$\Omega_q(\Omega_q + \Delta_+)(-\Omega_q + \Delta_-) + T(\mathbf{q}, -\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_+) T(\mathbf{p}_+, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) |\Psi_0|^2 (-\Omega_q + \Delta_-) - T(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{p}_-) T(\mathbf{p}_-, \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{q}) |\Psi_0|^2 (\Omega_q + \Delta_+) = 0, \quad (129)$$

which can be solved numerically for Ω_q , which is then used to find the corresponding eigenvectors

$$\begin{pmatrix} A_q \\ A_{\mathbf{p}_+} \\ A_{\mathbf{p}_-} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \frac{T(\mathbf{p}_+, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) \Psi_0}{-i(\Omega_q + \Delta_+)} \\ \frac{T(\mathbf{p}_-, \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{q}) \Psi_0^*}{i(\Omega_q - \Delta_-)} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (130)$$

Instability occurs when a root Ω_q has a positive imaginary part, which is the growth rate of the instability, $\gamma = \Im(\Omega_q) > 0$. Then $\tau = \frac{1}{\gamma}$ is the characteristic growth time. The case of a purely meridional primary wave ($\mathbf{p} = (p, 0)$) subject to a purely zonal perturbation ($\mathbf{q} = (0, q)$) is of physical interest. In this case, the dispersion relation, Eq. (129), simplifies somewhat (see [82]):

$$\Omega'^3 + \frac{s^4 [2M^2(1-s^2)(1+f)^2(s^2+f+1) - (s^2+f)]}{(1+f)^2(s^2+1+f)^2(s^2+f)} \Omega' = 0. \quad (131)$$

where $s = q/p$, $\Omega' = \Omega_q/p$ and $f = F/p^2$. The roots are

$$\Omega' = 0 \quad (132)$$

$$\Omega' = \frac{\pm i s^2}{(1+f)(s^2+1+f)} \left[\frac{2M^2(1-s^2)(1+f)^2(s^2+f+1) - (s^2+f)}{s^2+f} \right]^{1/2}. \quad (133)$$

5.2. Cases with purely meridional carrier wave

The structure of the instability depends strongly on the parameter M . For illustration, let us consider the case where the carrier wave is purely meridional, $\mathbf{p} = (p_x, 0)$. As seen in Fig. 5, for $M \rightarrow 0$ the instability concentrates narrowly around two oval-shaped curves. Each of these ovals appears to be the resonant curve on which the carrier wave, the modulation and one of the satellites are in exact three-wave resonance:

$$\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{p}_- + \mathbf{q}, \quad \omega(\mathbf{p}) = \omega(\mathbf{p}_-) + \omega(\mathbf{q}), \quad (134)$$

$$\text{or } \mathbf{p} = \mathbf{p}_+ - \mathbf{q}, \quad \omega(\mathbf{p}) = \omega(\mathbf{p}_+) - \omega(\mathbf{q}). \quad (135)$$

In the strong interaction limit, $M \rightarrow \infty$, the β -term in the CHM equation is unimportant and the MI problem is reduced to the well-known instability of the Kolmogorov (sine-shaped) plane-parallel shear flows described by the Euler equation for the incompressible fluid [104, 105]. The maximum instability is obtained when the primary and secondary waves are perpendicular [40] and the traditional approach is to select a meridional flow such that $\mathbf{p}$ is along the x -axis and the perturbation $\mathbf{q}$ along the y -axis. In this situation, looking at Fig. 5, left and centre panels, the modulation wavevector $\mathbf{q}$ is equally close to both branches of the resonant manifold. However, in the weak nonlinearity limit (Fig. 5, right panel), the maximally unstable perturbation bifurcates off the zonal axis at a critical value of $M_c \approx 0.53474$, tending to a point on the resonant manifold located at an angle of $5\pi/6$ with the x -axis as M reduces further as shown in Fig. 7.

5.3. Cases with purely zonal modulation

Fixing modulation $\mathbf{q}$ to be purely zonal, one can study the instability for different $\mathbf{p}$. This results in the most familiar statement in the MI papers on plasmas [98, 99, 100] that the primary wave will be unstable if it lies within the cone $1/\rho^2 + p_x^2 - 3p_y^2 > 0$. When $\rho = \infty$, this cone reduces to $p_y < \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} p_x$. However, this is true only in the double limit $M \gg 1, p \gg q$. Removing the scale separation condition $p \gg q$ but still keeping $M \gg 1$ arrives at a more general instability region [40] $\cos^2 \phi < (1 + q^2/p^2)/4$, where ϕ is the angle between $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{q}$.

Fig. 8 shows the instability growth rate as a function of $\mathbf{p}$ for a fixed zonal modulation $\mathbf{q} = (0, 1)$ and $F = 0$ (ie. $\rho = \infty$). As $M \rightarrow 0$, a region of stable wavenumbers inside the cone $p_y < \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} p_x$ becomes larger such that unstable wavevectors require

Figure 5. Growth rate of the modulational instability as a function of $\mathbf{q}$ for a fixed meridional primary wavevector, $\mathbf{p} = (1, 0)$ and $\rho = \infty$ for various values of the nonlinearity M .

Figure 6. Growth rate of the modulational instability as a function of $\mathbf{q}$ for a fixed meridional primary wavevector, $\mathbf{p} = (1, 0)$ and $F = 1$ for various values of the nonlinearity M . The curves are qualitatively similar to the $F = 0$ curves shown in Fig. 5.

Figure 7. Angle, θ , between the $\mathbf{q}$ wavevector of the maximally unstable perturbation and the x -axis as a function of M . Inset plots Δ_M and Ω_{xx} as a function of M illustrating the transition of the maximum growth rate for on-axis perturbations from a local maximum to a saddle point at $M \approx 0.53$.

Figure 8. Growth rate of the modulational instability, given by Eq. 129 as a function of $\mathbf{p}$ for a fixed zonal modulation wavevector, $\mathbf{q} = (0, 1)$ and $\rho = \infty$ for various levels of M . The dashed line is the cone defined by $p_y < \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} p_x$

a larger p_x . Furthermore, for large M , an instability exists for some wavenumbers outside the cone which are very close to the zonal direction, so that the maximum growth occurs for the primary wave orientations closer to the zonal rather than the meridional direction, see Fig. 8 for $M = 10$.

On the other hand, the choice of the primary wave direction is often dictated not by the maximum growth rate of the modulational instability, but by the structure of the primary instability creating the Rossby and drift waves.

In the limit of weak nonlinearity $M \ll 1$, the dynamics are completely wave dominated, and the instability is again close to the resonant curves (134) and (135). The nonlinear terms allow waves to interact weakly and exchange energy. Since the nonlinearity is quadratic, wave interactions are triadic i.e. three-wave resonances are allowed by the dispersion relation given by Eq. (129). Any triad of waves having wavevectors $\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{k}_1$ and $\mathbf{k}_2$ interact only if they satisfy the resonance conditions, Eq. (60). In fact, in Fig. 5, right panel, we can identify two resonant curves corresponding to the two resonant triads, $(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}_+)$ and $(\mathbf{p}_-, \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p})$ with sideband vectors $\mathbf{p}_\pm = \mathbf{p} \pm \mathbf{q}$. An interesting feature of instability for $M \ll 1$ is evident in Fig. 8, that for fixed zonal $\mathbf{q}$ the unstable region becomes narrow and collapses onto the sides of the cone confined by the lines $p_y = \pm p_x / \sqrt{3}$ [82]. It should be noted that these resonant manifolds are relevant even for higher levels of nonlinearity because, as can be seen from Fig. 5, the unstable modulations still concentrate close to the resonant curves.

5.4. Finite ρ effects and EHM

In CHM, when ρ is finite, there are two regimes [82, online supplement], depending on the value of M : For $M > \sqrt{\frac{2}{27}}$ the finite radius reduces the growth rate of the instability but cannot suppress it, whereas for $M \leq \sqrt{\frac{2}{27}}$ there is a range of intermediate radii at which the instability is completely suppressed. The inhibition of the growth of large scale zonal flows by modulational instability as the deformation radius decreases (or F increases) is reminiscent of the results of Okuno and Masuda [106] who studied the effect of increasing F on decaying β -plane turbulence and found that the anisotropy of large scales induced by the β -effect (which they referred to as the Rhines effect although we have not used this term) was suppressed as F increases. The common feature is that with all else kept constant, decreasing the deformation radius tends to inhibit the generation of large scale velocities. This is already obvious from the spectral form of the energy invariant $E_{\mathbf{k}}$ in Eq. (15). The larger the value of F , the smaller the value of $\psi_{\mathbf{k}}$ for a given value of the total energy in mode $\mathbf{k}$ and hence the smaller the associated velocity. This potential energy “penalty” associated with the F term becomes more pronounced at larger scales since the k^2 term drops out. For very large scales $\psi_{\mathbf{k}} \sim F^{-\frac{1}{2}}$. To the extent that both the Rhines effect and the modulational instability are large-scale phenomena it is not too surprising that, all else being equal, both are suppressed as F grows.

Moving on to the EHM model, we remind the reader that the EHM case is identical to CHM unless the radius ρ is finite and one of the modes (most likely $\mathbf{q}$) is purely zonal. Thus, all results described above for the cases $\rho = \infty$ or/and when the modulation was not purely zonal apply equally to the CHM and the EHM models. Modulational instability within the EHM model was considered by [101]. Their WKB-type method implied (explicitly) scale separation between the carrier wave and the modulation and (implicitly) strong nonlinearity $M \gg 1$ (see discussion in [82]). It was shown that for EHM the instability is stronger for purely zonal $\mathbf{q}$. This conclusion is generally true also for finite values of M [102].

Fig. 9 shows the amplitude of the perturbation mode $\mathbf{q}$ obtained by solving numerically the 4MT system, defined in Eqs (104), for the EHM and CHM equations. Clearly, the effect of the extension to the CHM equation is that the growth rate associated with the EHM model is larger than that for the CHM model.

Figure 9. The growth of the zonal mode for identical initial conditions in ODE simulations of the EHM and CHM systems for the case $\mathbf{p} = (10, 0)$, $\rho = 0.6$, $\psi_0 = 0.01$ and $\beta = 10$. Both have been normalised using the analytical linear growth time of the EHM system.

5.5. Relationship between modulational instability and zonostrophic instability

It has recently been shown by Srinivasan and Young [107] that a state of spatially homogeneous turbulence in the CHM equation is unstable to coherent zonal perturbations. Such perturbations can grow by extracting energy from the turbulent background to produce coherent jets from an initially jetless state of incoherent turbulence. Srinivasan and Young have coined the term zonostrophic instability to describe this phenomenon. The growth rate of the zonostrophic instability is a function of the spectrum of the forcing of the turbulent background; see Eq. (45) of [107]. Zonostrophic instability has been proposed as another candidate mechanism for the formation of zonal jets. A related, but seemingly distinct, pattern forming instability has recently been suggested [108] as another mechanism for generating zonal jets from statistically homogeneous background turbulence. While the concept of zonostrophic instability as described in [107] may not, at first sight, have much in common with the deterministic initial value problem outlined above to describe the modulational instability, in fact the two mechanisms are closely related. It has been shown by Parker and Krommes [109] that the dispersion relation for zonostrophic instability reduces to Eq. (131) in the case where the background spectrum is taken to be a purely meridional monochromatic wave with wavevector $\mathbf{p}$. The modulational instability is therefore a special case of the zonostrophic instability of an arbitrary background spectrum. The first study of the instability of a broadband Rossby/drift wave spectrum to large-scale zonal perturbations was done by Manin and Nazarenko [98].

6. Modulational Instability: nonlinear stage

In this section we will describe the nonlinear development and saturation of the modulational instability described in the previous section at the level of linear stability theory. Although the 4MT, Eqs (104), was used as the departure point for the linear stability analysis, it is a fully nonlinear set of equations in its own right with its own nonlinear dynamics. Unlike the case of the 3MT described in Sec. 4.3, analytic results for the 4MT are not readily available. The 4MT system can, however, be easily solved numerically. In addition to checking the linear instability predictions against DNS, the extent to which the nonlinear dynamics of the 4MT captures the behaviour of the full PDE will also be explored. In all cases, the initial condition is chosen to be along the unstable eigenvector of the 4MT.

Immediately from Fig. 10, it can be seen that the initial stage of evolution agrees very well with the predictions of the linear theory obtained from the 4MT. Moreover, the 4MT works rather well beyond the linear stage, particularly in the $M = 0.1$ case, where the initial growth reverses in agreement with the (periodic) behaviour of the four-mode system. For $M = 1$, the growth does not reverse, but rather experiences a saturation at the level where the four-mode system reaches a maximum and reverses. The most surprising behaviour is seen for $M = 10$ where the linear exponential growth continues well beyond the point of reversal of the four-wave system, even though the system is clearly nonlinear at these times and follows a self-similar evolution (see below).

A series of snapshots of the vorticity field for different nonlinearity levels are shown in Figs. 12, 13 and 14. $M = 0.1$ is shown in Fig. 12, $M = 1$ in Fig. 13 and $M = 10$ in Fig. 14. The cases simulated are for $\mathbf{p} = (10, 0)$ and $\mathbf{q} = (0, 1)$. The evolution of the mean zonal velocity $\bar{u}(y)$ averaged over x , obtained from DNS is shown in Fig. 11 for times close to the formation of the jet. Below we will consider these figures in the context of three different stages of the nonlinear evolution.

Figure 10. Comparison of the growth of the zonal mode $\mathbf{q}$ obtained by DNS versus solving 4MT system. In each case the primary wavenumber is $\mathbf{p} = (10, 0)$ and the modulation wavenumber is $\mathbf{q} = (0, 1)$. The nonlinearity levels are (A) $M = 10$, (B) $M = 1.0$ and (C) $M = 0.1$ and time is scaled by the corresponding τ .

Figure 11. Mean zonal velocity profiles for CHM ($s = 0$); (a) $M = 10$, (b) $M = 1.0$ and (c) $M = 0.1$.

6.1. Initial nonlinear stage: sharpening of jets

The nonlinear dynamics show zonal jets self-focusing and becoming very narrow with respect to the initial modulation wavelength. This self-focusing was predicted theoretically [98] for large M and $q \ll p$ where self-similar solutions were obtained describing a collapse of the jet width. This feature cannot be described by the 4MT because such an anharmonic jet shape involves strong contributions from higher harmonics $\mathbf{p} \pm n\mathbf{q}$.

It was shown in [82] that the zonal velocity $\bar{u}$ in a run with $M = 10$ and $\rho = \infty$ can be fitted with a self-similar shape $\bar{u}(y, t) = a(t) f(b(t)y)$, where $a(t) = u_0 e^{\gamma q t}$ and $b(t) = e^{1.85 t}$. The nonlinear growth at the self-similar stage continues with the same exponential law, $e^{\gamma q t}$, as in the linear dynamics. The self-similarity must stop when the scale separation property breaks down due to the jet narrowing, at which point a roll-up into vortices occurs. For smaller M , the extension of the growth rate beyond the linear stage is not observed and the amplitude of the zonal mode decreases after reaching a maximum in correspondence with the solution of the 4MT. The self-focusing is still observed but is much reduced and the self-similar stage is not clearly seen. Also, when M gets smaller, we observe a more pronounced asymmetry: the narrow jets appear in the eastward direction and the westward jets are thicker and less intense (see Fig. 11).

6.2. Intermediate nonlinear stage: vortex roll-up vs oscillation

It is evident from Figs. 12 and 14 that there are two qualitatively different types of behaviour, namely vortex roll-up followed by saturation or the oscillatory wave dynamics. For weak waves, $M < M_*$, the oscillatory behaviour is seen where the system returns close to the initial state. The 4MT model captures this effect very well. This oscillation between a Rossby wave and a zonal flow has been reported from numerical studies of a barotropic fluid [110] and similar behaviour has also been noted for the EHM model [22] for drift turbulence. For strong waves, $M > M_*$, the nonlinear evolution is vortex dominated and the vorticity of the initial primary wave rolls into vortices and organises itself into streets of tightly packed vortices, so that the vortex size and the space between the nearby vortices are approximately equal to the half wavelength of the carrier wave. This corresponds to the

Figure 12. Vorticity snapshots for a run with $\mathbf{p} = (10, 0)$ and $\mathbf{q} = (0, 1)$, $M = 0.1$ and $\rho = \infty$. The growth stage is followed by growth reversal, saturation and transition to irregular off-zonal jet structures.

jet velocity saturating. Of course here we deal with a latent jet in a sense that it looks like a jet only when averaged (over x or t), whereas the instantaneous velocity field is essentially 2D. The structure of the vortex street and the respective latent jet is similar to the one observed experimentally in [111].

At the moment of the vortex roll-up energy spills beyond the four modes and the 4MT description fails. It is therefore natural to seek the critical level of nonlinearity M_* which distinguishes between the two types of behaviour. If the maximum jet strength, as predicted by the 4MT, exceeds the value of the Rayleigh-Kuo necessary instability condition $\partial_{yy}\bar{u}(y) - \beta > 0$ [112, 113, 44, 82], then the vortex roll-up occurs and the jet strength saturates for a long time. At this point, the behaviour of the system starts to depart from that of the 4MT. If however, the maximum jet strength remains below the Rayleigh-Kuo threshold, then the system's growth reverses and follows the 4MT dynamics for a longer time.

This simple picture permits a qualitative physical estimate for the saturated velocity of the jet $u_{max} \approx 3 \frac{M\beta}{p^2}$ and respectively $M_* \sim \frac{1}{3}$, which agrees with the DNS result for the oscillatory-saturated transition at $M_* \approx 0.25 - 0.35$ [82]. Numerical explorations in Fig. 15 reveal that $M_* \approx 0.25 - 0.35$ but this boundary is not sharp. For $M = 0.25$ the dynamics are definitely wave-dominated although some elongated, fuzzy vortices are still apparent, whereas for $M = 0.35$ streets of round vortices are clearly formed with some wave-like oscillations still present.

The vortex streets arising for higher M values are quasi-stationary: for a certain transitional period of time they could be viewed as moving in the horizontal direction without changing shape. The speed of such a motion could be measured using Hovmöller diagrams [114]. Namely, we will plot vorticity as a function of x and t measured at a fixed y corresponding to the maximum zonal velocity of the westward jet; see Fig. 16. For early times on these plots we observe a set of inclined stripes with slopes corresponding to the phase speed of the carrier wave, $V = -\beta/p^2 = -0.1$. At the moment of vortex roll-up, the stripes change their slopes: the propagation speed V changes from eastward to westward. We would like to compare this speed with the prediction of [115] for the vortex street

$$V = \bar{u} - (\beta - d^2\bar{u}/dy^2)/p^2,$$

which is shown in Fig. 17 as a function of y for several different times t . We see that at the time the reversal has finished and the vortex street has entered the stage of a quasi-stationary propagation, e.g. at $t = 10.2$ for the $M = 4$ case, we see a reasonable agreement of the slope $V \approx 0.25$ with the above formula which, according to Fig. 17 (right), predicts the slopes $V \approx 0.2$ at $t = 10.2$ at the jet maximum. The picture is qualitatively similar for the $M = 10$ case: one can see reversal of the zonal propagation direction after the vortex roll-up. However, the vortex street existence is much shorter and it never fully settles into a quasi-stationary state. Measurement of the theoretical value for V in Fig. 17 (left) shows a wild variability from $V = -30$ to $V = 100$ within the relevant interval $9.1 \leq t \leq 11.2$, which indicates strong non-stationarity and, therefore, inapplicability of the theoretical formula obtained

Figure 13. Vorticity snapshots showing the linear growth, saturation and transition to turbulence of a zonal perturbation to a meridional primary wave having $M = 1$ and $\rho = \infty$. The horizontal axis is x and the vertical is y .

for the stationary case. For smaller values of M the change in V is less, so that the propagation direction may not reverse. In fact, for $M \leq 1$ the value of V is almost unchanged with respect to the initial value corresponding to the phase speed of the carrier wave, $V = -\beta/p^2$ even after the roll-up.

6.3. Late nonlinear stage: turbulence

In all cases the orderly nonlinear motion of the intermediate stages is followed by a disordered turbulent state at the late stage of evolution. However, the properties of such turbulence are different for the cases $M < M_*$ and $M > M_*$, as clearly seen in the last frames of the Figs. 12 and 14. For weak waves, $M < M_*$, the quasi-oscillatory behaviour where the system periodically returns close to the initial state is not sustained and a transition to an anisotropic turbulent state occurs. The dominant jet structures observed in such a turbulent state in Fig. 12(f) are off-zonal. This effect may be connected to the off-zonal “striations” reported for ocean observations [10] although these ocean striations only become evident in the averaged data since they are sufficiently weak. For strong waves, $M > M_*$, at the final stages the vortex streets break up due to a vortex pairing instability which is followed by a transition to turbulence. Such turbulence is anisotropic with a pronounced zonal component and a well-formed potential vorticity staircase, illustrated by the thick black line in Fig. 14(f) [33].

6.4. Finite deformation radius

With a finite Larmor/deformation radius ρ , some vortex streets are still evident. In fact, vortex roll-up occurs quicker at the stage where the 4MT model still predicts a linear growth i.e. well before the 4MT prediction for the zonal mode reaches its maximum. This is evident in Fig. 19 where the predicted linear growth rate is now observed for only one to two linear timescales.

6.5. EHM

Similarly, numerical results show that two qualitatively distinct regimes are also observed by varying ρ in the EHM model. Fig. 20(a) shows the amplitude of the zonal mode for several different values of ρ at the same value of the nonlinearity parameter $M = 0.1$. The runs all have a linear phase in which they grow at the rate predicted by Eq. (129) yet increasing ρ gradually changes the behaviour of the system so that the zonal mode saturates rather than oscillates, similar to CHM. This change in behaviour occurs between $\rho = 1.5$ and $\rho = 2$. Note that transition to the saturated regime occurs in EHM at smaller levels of the nonlinearity than in the CHM model. Indeed, in CHM the case $M = 0.1$ exhibited an oscillatory behaviour even for $\rho = \infty$. Fig. 20(b) shows the second case in which the initial pump wave amplitude was ten times larger giving $M = 1$. In this case the switch from saturating to oscillatory behaviour occurs between $\rho = 0.4$ and $\rho = 0.5$.

Figure 14. Potential vorticity (PV) snapshots for a run with $\mathbf{p} = (10, 0)$ and $\mathbf{q} = (0, 1)$, $M = 10$ and $\rho = \infty$. The growth stage is followed by saturation to a vortex street state slowly deteriorating to turbulence with a PV staircase structure. The black line on the last frame is the profile of the zonal averaged PV.

6.6. Instability and zonal jets in HW/EHW model

As we have already mentioned, the HW model, (24), has a great advantage over the CHM/EHM in that it contains a primary instability capable of spontaneously generating waves. On the other hand, this property adds an extra complexity which prevents one from using the standard MI approach based on the four-mode truncation. The problem is that if we start with a single monochromatic pump wave, perturb it with a modulation and two sideband modes and linearise the system, we would end up with a system of equations with time dependent coefficients which has no simple exponential (or complex exponential) solution.

However, the 4MT approach is still useful for a qualitative and even some quantitative understanding of the nonlinear dynamics of the HW/EHW model. Let us truncate the system (24) by allowing the wavevectors $\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{k}_1$ and $\mathbf{k}_2$ take only values $\mathbf{p}$, $\mathbf{q}$, $\mathbf{p}_\pm = \mathbf{p} \pm \mathbf{q}$ and their negatives (taking into account that $\psi_{-\mathbf{k}} = \bar{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}}$). From Eqs (24) we have the following system of equations,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \partial_t \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}} &= -\frac{\alpha z}{p^2} (\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}} - \hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}}) + T(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}_-) \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_-} + T(\mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}_+) \bar{\hat{\psi}}_{\mathbf{q}} \bar{\hat{\psi}}_{\mathbf{p}_-}, \\
 \partial_t \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}} &= -\frac{\alpha z}{q^2} (\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}} - \hat{n}_{\mathbf{q}}) + T(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{p}_-) \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}} \bar{\hat{\psi}}_{\mathbf{p}_-} + T(\mathbf{q}, -\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_+) \bar{\hat{\psi}}_{\mathbf{p}} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+}, \\
 \partial_t \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_-} &= -\frac{\alpha z}{p_-^2} (\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_-} - \hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}_-}) + T(\mathbf{p}_-, \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{q}) \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}} \bar{\hat{\psi}}_{\mathbf{q}}, \\
 \partial_t \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+} &= -\frac{\alpha z}{p_+^2} (\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+} - \hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}_+}) + T(\mathbf{p}_+, \mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}}
 \end{aligned} \tag{136}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
 \partial_t \hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}} &= -ikp_y \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}} + z\alpha (\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}} - \hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}}) - R(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) (\hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}_-} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}} - \hat{n}_{\mathbf{q}} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_-} + \hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}_+} \bar{\hat{\psi}}_{\mathbf{q}} - \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+} \bar{\hat{n}}_{\mathbf{q}}), \\
 \partial_t \hat{n}_{\mathbf{q}} &= -ikq_y \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}} + z\alpha (\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}} - \hat{n}_{\mathbf{q}}) - R(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) (\hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}} \bar{\hat{\psi}}_{\mathbf{p}_-} - \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}} \bar{\hat{n}}_{\mathbf{p}_-} - \bar{\hat{n}}_{\mathbf{p}} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+} + \bar{\hat{\psi}}_{\mathbf{p}} \hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}_+}), \\
 \partial_t \hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}_-} &= -ikp_{-y} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_-} + z\alpha (\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_-} - \hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}_-}) + R(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) (\hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}} \bar{\hat{\psi}}_{\mathbf{q}} - \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}} \bar{\hat{n}}_{\mathbf{q}}), \\
 \partial_t \hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}_+} &= -ikp_{+y} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+} + z\alpha (\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+} - \hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}_+}) - R(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{q}) (\hat{n}_{\mathbf{p}} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}} - \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}} \hat{n}_{\mathbf{q}}),
 \end{aligned} \tag{137}$$

Figure 15. Growth of zonal perturbations due to modulational instability of a meridional primary wave having $\mathbf{p} = (10, 0)$ for several different values of M . The amplitude of the zonal mode has been scaled by Ψ_0 and time has been scaled by τ , the inverse of the instability growth rate.

Figure 16. Hovmöller diagrams of vorticity as a function of time and x at a fixed y corresponding to the maximum zonal velocity of the westward jet. In each case, $\beta = 10$, the primary wavenumber is $\mathbf{p} = (10, 0)$ and the modulation wavenumber is $\mathbf{q} = (0, 1)$. The nonlinearity levels are (left) $M = 10$ and (right) $M = 4$. The solid straight lines correspond to the phase speed of the carrier wave, $V = -\beta/p^2 = -0.1$. The dashed lines indicate the slopes $V = 0.25$ on the right plot, and $V = 1$ and $V = 0.5$ on the left plot.

6.6.1. Primary instability in the HW/EHW system

Let us first of all consider the primary instability in the HW/EHW model which is called the drift-dissipative instability. Substituting into Eq. (24) a plane wave solution, $\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}}, \hat{n}_{\mathbf{k}} \sim e^{-i\omega_{\mathbf{k}}t}$ and linearising, we get

$$\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{1}{2}[-ib \pm ib(1 - 4i\omega_*/b)^{1/2}], \quad (138)$$

where $b = \alpha z(1 + (\rho k)^{-2})$, and $\omega_* = k_y \kappa / (1 + \rho^2 k^2)$. The plus sign is an unstable mode $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} = \Im \omega_{\mathbf{k}} > 0$ with maximum growth rate at $\mathbf{k} \approx (1/\rho, 0)$.

6.6.2. Secondary instability in the HW system - MI

The growth rate of the primary instability $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}$ has a wide distribution around its maximum. It is natural to assume that the dominant modes will be those close to the instability maximum and that they should have comparable strengths. In terms of the 4MT this means that the modes $\mathbf{p}$, $\mathbf{p}_+$ and $\mathbf{p}_-$ have similar amplitudes and growth rates whereas the mode $\mathbf{q}$ is initially weak. Since $\mathbf{p}$, $\mathbf{p}_+$ and $\mathbf{p}_-$ must be close to the primary instability maximum, they must also be close to each other. Therefore, there arises a scale separation $q \ll k$. Furthermore, for nearly meridional $\mathbf{p}$, $\mathbf{p}_+$ and $\mathbf{p}_-$ with $\mathbf{q}$ close to the resonant curve, $\mathbf{q}$ is nearly zonal. Thus the fastest growing $\mathbf{q}$ -mode should have the smallest zonal wavenumber allowed by the box.

Note that all zonal $\mathbf{q}$ are neutrally stable to the primary instability mechanism, $\gamma_{\mathbf{q}} = 0$, i.e. the linear terms would vanish from the mode- $\mathbf{q}$ equation in Eqs (136). Let us substitute into the right-hand side of this equation $\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}} = \psi_{\mathbf{p}}(0)e^{-i\omega_{\mathbf{p}}t}$, $\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_-} =$

Figure 17. Plot of $V = \bar{u} - (\beta - d^2\bar{u}/dy^2)/p^2$ focused at the jet centre. In each case, $\beta = 10$, the primary wavenumber is $\mathbf{p} = (10, 0)$ and the modulation wavenumber is $\mathbf{q} = (0, 1)$. The nonlinearity levels are (A) $M = 10$ and (B) $M = 4$.

$\psi_{\mathbf{p}}(0)e^{-i\omega_{\mathbf{p}}t}$, $\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+} = \psi_{\mathbf{p}}(0)e^{-i\omega_{\mathbf{p}_+}t}$. Taking into account that the real parts of the frequencies of the triads $\mathbf{p}$, $\mathbf{p}_+$, $\mathbf{q}$ and $\mathbf{p}$, $\mathbf{p}_-$, $\mathbf{q}$ are in near resonance and that for the imaginary part we have $\gamma_{\mathbf{p}} \approx \gamma_{\mathbf{p}_-} \approx \gamma_{\mathbf{p}_+}$. This gives the following equation for the mode $\mathbf{q}$,

$$\partial_t \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}} = \lambda e^{2\gamma_{\mathbf{p}}t},$$

where

$$\lambda = T(\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{p}_-)\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}}(0)\bar{\hat{\psi}}_{\mathbf{p}_-}(0) + T(\mathbf{q}, -\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_+)\bar{\hat{\psi}}_{\mathbf{p}}(0)\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{p}_+}(0) \quad (139)$$

which has a solution:

$$\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}} = \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{q}}(0) + \frac{\lambda}{2\gamma_{\mathbf{p}}} e^{2\gamma_{\mathbf{p}}t}. \quad (140)$$

We conclude that the MI growth rate for the zonal mode in the HW/EHW system is the double of the maximum growth rate of the primary instability, $\gamma_{\mathbf{p}} = \gamma_{\max}$. This growth occurs only after a delay needed for the second term in Eq. (139) to overtake the first one. This kind of the behaviour was recently observed in the direct numerical simulations of the MI in the HW model [116].

7. Invariants and anisotropic cascades in Rossby and drift wave turbulence

7.1. Forms of inverse energy cascade and the role of anisotropy

7.1.1. Distinctions between steady and unsteady cascades and different forcing mechanisms

The term “inverse cascade” is often used informally to describe any turbulent process in which a conserved quantity is transferred to large scales as a result of nonlinear interactions. Examples include the inverse cascade of energy in two-dimensional hydrodynamic turbulence [117], the inverse cascade of wave action in surface gravity wave turbulence [57, 30] or the inverse cascade of particles in turbulent Bose-Einstein condensates [58]. While we agree that this is reasonable terminology, it is important to remember that much of the theoretical literature on inverse cascades deals with a more specific and idealised situation. That is a steady state inverse cascade driven by a constant rate of input of the relevant conserved quantity at small scales which is balanced by a constant rate of dissipation at large scales with a large and effectively non-dissipative inertial range of scales separating the two. In particular, the two original examples of inverse cascades, Kraichnan’s $k^{-5/3}$ spectrum in two dimensional hydrodynamic turbulence [2] and Zakharov’s $k^{-23/6}$ inverse waveaction cascade spectrum for surface gravity waves [57] both consider this idealised situation. Steady forcing is not however appropriate to all situations. In this review, we have already considered in Sec. 5 a situation in which there is no external forcing at all and will look in Sec. 8 at a forced situation in which energy is not supplied to the system at a constant rate as a result of the forcing mechanism being multiplicative. The question arises to what extent such situations differ from the idealised inverse cascade scenarios of Kraichnan and Zakharov.

One occasionally comes across the misconception that the scaling properties of turbulent cascades, direct or inverse, are so universal that there is no distinction between these different forcing situations. This misconception probably arises due to the fact that it is true for the case of the direct energy cascade in three-dimensional hydrodynamic turbulence. For that system it is widely accepted that both steadily forced turbulence and unforced decaying turbulence exhibit the same $k^{-5/3}$ spectrum. This equivalence between the scaling properties of forced and decaying cascades categorically does not hold in general. It only holds for cascades

Figure 18. Vorticity snapshots showing the transition to turbulence of a zonal perturbation to a meridional primary wave having $M = 1$ and $F = 200$.

which have *finite capacity* in the sense of [30]. A steady isotropic direct energy cascade with forcing wavenumber k_f and dissipation wavenumber k_d is said to have finite capacity if the angle-averaged energy spectrum E_k has the property

$$\lim_{k_d \rightarrow \infty} \int_{k_f}^{k_d} E_k dk < \infty,$$

and to have infinite capacity otherwise. A similar criterion applies to inverse cascades, where finite capacity means that

$$\lim_{k_d \rightarrow 0} \int_{k_d}^{k_f} E_k dk < \infty.$$

The distinction between finite and infinite capacity cascades has been implicitly acknowledged in the wave turbulence literature [118] even before it was given a name but is perhaps not as widely known as it should be. For an explicitly solvable example of the difference between steady and transient infinite capacity cascades in isotropic wave turbulence see [119]. The class of finite capacity cascades includes the direct energy cascade in three-dimensional hydrodynamic turbulence:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{k_f}^{k_d} c \varepsilon^{\frac{2}{3}} k^{-\frac{5}{3}} dk &= \frac{3}{2} c \varepsilon^{\frac{2}{3}} \left[k_f^{-\frac{2}{3}} - k_d^{-\frac{2}{3}} \right] \\ &\rightarrow \frac{3}{2} c \varepsilon^{\frac{2}{3}} k_f^{-\frac{2}{3}} < \infty \quad \text{as } k_d \rightarrow \infty. \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand, the inverse energy cascade in two-dimensional hydrodynamic turbulence has *infinite capacity*:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{k_d}^{k_f} c \varepsilon^{\frac{2}{3}} k^{-\frac{5}{3}} dk &= \frac{3}{2} c \varepsilon^{\frac{2}{3}} \left[k_d^{-\frac{2}{3}} - k_f^{-\frac{2}{3}} \right] \\ &\rightarrow \infty \quad \text{as } k_d \rightarrow 0. \end{aligned}$$

This is the fundamental reason why forced and decaying two-dimensional turbulence behave so differently and in particular, why there is no reason to expect that decaying two-dimensional turbulence should exhibit a $k^{-5/3}$ inverse cascade spectrum even in a transient sense. Nor is there any reason to expect a $k^{-5/3}$ spectrum in the case of multiplicative forcing. The distinct properties of inverse cascades driven by multiplicative forcing have recently been explored in considerable detail in the context of turbulence in Bose-Einstein condensates by Vladimirova et al [46].

Figure 19. Comparison of the growth of the zonal mode $\mathbf{q}$ obtained by DNS versus solving 4MT system for various $F = \frac{1}{\rho^2}$. In each case the primary wavenumber is $\mathbf{p} = (10, 0)$ and the modulation wavenumber is $\mathbf{q} = (0, 1)$. The nonlinearity levels are (a) $M = 10$, (b) $M = 1.0$ and (c) $M = 0.2$.

Figure 20. The amplitude of the zonal mode for various ρ with (a) $\psi_0 = 0.001$ ($M = 0.1$) and (b) $\psi_0 = 0.01$ ($M = 1$), other parameters were identical, $\beta = 10$, $\mathbf{p} = (10, 0)$, $\mathbf{q} = (0, 1)$. Each case has been scaled by its own linear growth time. ODE predictions are shown with solid lines, full simulations with markers.

Many of these considerations are equally applicable to β -plane turbulence. It shares a very similar phenomenology with two-dimensional hydrodynamic turbulence but with additional complications arising due to anisotropy. In this section we discuss some of the main ideas of steadily forced inverse cascades on the β -plane. In the light of the above discussion, these results are not expected to apply directly to the simulations presented in Secs. 5 or 8.

7.1.2. Dimensional arguments for steady isotropic inverse cascade spectra for β -plane turbulence

Let us start by considering dimensional arguments for steady state spectra which neglect anisotropy. For isotropic systems in d dimensions, the spectral energy density, $E_{\mathbf{k}}$, and angle-averaged spectral energy density, E_k , are related by

$$E_k = \Omega_d E_{\mathbf{k}} k^{d-1} \quad (141)$$

where Ω_d is the integral over the angular variables in d dimensions. In the case of β -plane turbulence, $d = 2$. These quantities integrate as follows to give a quantity having dimension of energy (L^2/T^2):

$$\int_0^\infty E_k dk = \int E_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k} = E.$$

From this we deduce that dimensionally

$$\begin{aligned} [E_{\mathbf{k}}] &= \frac{L^{2+d}}{T^2} \\ [E_k] &= \frac{L^3}{T^2}. \end{aligned}$$

In a steady cascade, the energy flux, ε , has dimension of energy per unit time:

$$[\varepsilon] = \frac{L^2}{T^3}.$$

Assuming that the angle-averaged spectral energy density depends only on ϵ and k , dimensional analysis leads to

$$E_k = c \epsilon^{\frac{2}{3}} k^{-\frac{5}{3}}, \quad (142)$$

where c is a dimensionless constant. This is the standard Kolmogorov argument for isotropic turbulence. However β -plane turbulence has an additional dimensional parameter, β . It has dimension

$$[\beta] = \frac{1}{LT}.$$

It is possible to construct a characteristic wavenumber from ϵ and β [62]:

$$k_\beta = \left(\frac{\beta^3}{\epsilon} \right)^{\frac{1}{5}}. \quad (143)$$

With this additional dimensional variable included, the dimensional argument leading to the Kolmogorov spectrum obviously becomes under-determined. That is to say, the equation

$$E_k = c \epsilon^{\frac{5-x}{5}} \beta^{\frac{3x-5}{5}} k^{-x}$$

is dimensionally correct for *any* choice of the scaling exponent, x . Note that there is an explicit assumption of universality made here: we have asserted from the outset that the spectrum does not depend on the forcing scale, k_f , or the dissipation scale, k_d . If we accept this assertion, the above formula makes it clear that there are two special situations. The first is the case where E_k is assumed to be independent of β , in which case we must have $x = 5/3$ and the Kolmogorov spectrum Eq. (142) is recovered. The second is the case where E_k is assumed to be independent of ϵ which gives

$$E_k = c' \beta^2 k^{-5}, \quad (144)$$

where c' is a different dimensionless constant. This spectrum was first written down by Rhines [120] although he discounted it on the basis that it is so steep that it implies a nonlocal interaction with small scales. Since Eq. (144) is independent of the energy flux, it is also the generalised Phillips spectrum [121] for β -plane turbulence which takes its name from the flux-independent spectrum for surface gravity waves first proposed long ago on dimensional grounds by O.M. Phillips [122].

There is another way to arrive at the Rhines spectrum which will be informative when we try to take account of anisotropy in β -plane turbulence. This is via the “critical balance” argument [123]. The idea of critical balance is to assert that the linear and nonlinear terms in the equation of motion, Eq. (17), should be in balance at every wavenumber, k . Schematically critical balance for Eq. (17) reads

$$\omega_{\mathbf{k}} a_{\mathbf{k}} \sim W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} a_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \delta(\mathbf{k})(d\mathbf{k})^2.$$

If we ignore anisotropy and just count powers of k , the frequency $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ and nonlinear interaction coefficient, $W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}}$ (see Eq. (18)) scale as

$$\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \sim k^{-1} \quad \text{and} \quad W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} \sim k^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

respectively. To determine the scaling for $a_{\mathbf{k}}$ we put the fact that $E_{\mathbf{k}} = \omega_{\mathbf{k}} n_{\mathbf{k}}$ together with the definition (25) of the wave spectrum $n_{\mathbf{k}}$. This gives

$$a_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \sim \frac{E_{\mathbf{k}} \delta(\mathbf{k})}{\omega_{\mathbf{k}}}.$$

If $E_{\mathbf{k}} \sim k^{-x}$, then

$$a_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \sim k^{1-d-x}.$$

For critical balance we must have $\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \sim W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} a_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k}$. With the above scalings this gives

$$k^{-1} \sim k^{\frac{2+d-x}{2}}.$$

Critical balance is therefore obtained if we choose $x = 4 + d$. Setting $d = 2$ we find $E_{\mathbf{k}} \sim k^{-6}$ which again yields the Rhines spectrum (144) for the angle-averaged energy spectrum, E_k .

Figure 21. The dumb-bell or “lazy 8” curve described by Eq. (148)

7.1.3. Anisotropy, the dumb-bell curve and the inhibition of the inverse cascade by the β -effect

A problem with the previous discussion is that anisotropy has not been taken into account. While there is plenty of numerical and observational evidence that small scale β -plane turbulence is isotropic, it is evident that the large scales are strongly anisotropic in the regime where zonal jets emerge. We can estimate the wavenumbers at which anisotropy starts to play a significant role in β -plane turbulence by comparing the nonlinear eddy turnover time, τ_{NL} , associated with small scale isotropic turbulence to the linear timescale, τ_{L} , associated with large scale wave motions. The linear timescale is

$$\tau_{\text{L}} = \omega_{\mathbf{k}}^{-1} = \frac{k^2}{\beta k_x}. \quad (145)$$

To estimate the nonlinear timescale associated with small scale isotropic turbulence we begin by estimating the typical velocity fluctuation at a length scale r assuming a steady inverse cascade with energy flux ε . The constant flux of energy implies an exact relation for the third order longitudinal structure function directly analogous to Kolmogorov's $\frac{4}{5}$ law for three dimensional turbulence (see [1] for a discussion and references). In two dimensions we have

$$\langle (\delta v)_{\parallel}^3 \rangle = \frac{3}{2} \varepsilon r. \quad (146)$$

The fact that the sign is positive rather than negative is indicative of an inverse cascade. From this we conclude that the typical velocity fluctuation at scale r is $\delta v \sim (\varepsilon r)^{1/3}$. We can also estimate this fluctuation as $\delta v \sim r/\tau_{\text{NL}}$. Equating these two estimates and writing $r \sim k^{-1}$, we estimate the nonlinear timescale associated with small scale isotropic turbulence as

$$\tau_{\text{NL}} = (\varepsilon k^2)^{-\frac{1}{3}}. \quad (147)$$

The boundary between isotropic and anisotropic turbulence can be found by setting $\tau_{\text{NL}} = \tau_{\text{L}}$ as was done in [124]. The anisotropy enters these considerations through the anisotropy of the waves. From Eqs (145) and (147) we have

$$\frac{k^2}{\beta k_x} = (\varepsilon k^2)^{-\frac{1}{3}},$$

which, noting that $k^2 = k_x^2 + k_y^2$, can be rearranged to give

$$k_y = \pm \sqrt{k_{\beta}^{\frac{5}{3}} k_x^{\frac{3}{3}} - k_x^2} \quad (148)$$

where k_β is as given in Eq. (143). This curve is plotted in Fig. 21 and shows a characteristic “dumb-bell” shape. Outside the dumb-bell the eddy turnover time is shorter than the characteristic time of waves, $\tau_{NL} \ll \tau_L$ and isotropic turbulence is expected to dominate. Inside the dumb-bell the opposite is expected to be true, $\tau_{NL} \gg \tau_L$ and anisotropy dominates. Recall from Sec. 3 that the condition $\tau_{NL} \gg \tau_L$ is also the condition for applicability of weak wave turbulence. Therefore the dumb-bell curve described by Eq. (148) can equally be thought of as the boundary between strong vortex-dominated turbulence (outside) and weak wave turbulence (inside). It is sometimes said that the transition to a wave-dominated regime induced by the β effect acts to arrest the inverse cascade at the boundary of the dumb-bell curve (the characteristic scale of the curve is set by k_β). It has been pointed out by Sukoriansky [125] and others that this cannot be literally true since the β term is non-dissipative and cannot therefore act to absorb the energy flux carried by the inverse cascade. Furthermore, we have already seen in Sec. 3 that wave-dominated systems can continue to support an energy cascade mediated by wave-wave interactions. It is nevertheless true that the transfer of energy by wave-wave interactions is much less efficient than the transfer of energy via vortex-vortex interactions. For this reason, although the dumb-bell curve does not act to literally arrest the inverse cascade, the penetration of energy into the interior of the dumb-bell tends to be rather weak. One could then imagine that energy flux to wavenumbers smaller than k_β is diverted along the boundary of the dumb-bell curve. The result would be that further inverse cascade energy is funneled towards the zonal axis. This provides a conceptual explanation for why the inverse cascade spectrum of β -plane turbulence becomes anisotropic at the largest scales. For a detailed discussion of these issues and further references see [125].

The discussions above are strictly valid only for a steadily forced cascade. The existence of a qualitatively dumb-bell shaped region into which energy penetrates only slowly is, however, a robust feature of numerical simulations of β -plane turbulence under a variety of different forcing scenarios. All of these discussions do assume, however, that the forcing is acting at a small enough scale for a region of isotropic inverse cascade to exist outside of the dumb-bell region. In effect this means, $k_f \gg k_\beta$. One could imagine a weakly forced scenario in which $k_f \ll k_\beta$. In such a scenario, anisotropic weak wave turbulence would be applicable from the outset. We consider this situation in Sec. 7.3.

7.1.4. Steady anisotropic inverse cascade spectra: the k_y^{-5} spectrum

Another consequence of anisotropy is that most of the scaling arguments which we have discussed above break down near the zonal axis since $\omega_k \rightarrow 0$ as $k_x \rightarrow 0$. The dimensional arguments outlined above for isotropic β -plane turbulence do not generalise easily to incorporate anisotropy since the components of the wavevector, $\mathbf{k}$, in different directions should be treated as independent dimensional variables. Furthermore the energy flux also becomes a vector and, in principle, can also have different values in different directions. The critical balance argument, however, does have a natural generalisation to include anisotropy which provides a natural candidate for the spectrum of steady β -plane turbulence in the region near the zonal axis. The region of interest is $k_x \ll k_y$. Restricting ourselves, to the short-wave limit ($F \rightarrow 0$), we have already seen in Sec. 3.3.1 that in the limit of interest

$$\begin{aligned}\omega_{\mathbf{k}} &\sim \beta k_x k_y^{-2} \\ W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} &\sim \sqrt{\beta} k_x^{\frac{3}{2}} k_y^{-1}.\end{aligned}$$

If we assume that the energy spectrum is anisotropic, $E_{\mathbf{k}} \sim k_x^{-a} k_y^{-b}$ then following the same reasoning as above with $d = 2$,

$$a_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \sim k_x^{-a-2} k_y^{1-b}.$$

The critical balance criterion is, as previously, $\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \sim W_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} a_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k}$. With the above scalings this gives

$$k_x k_y^{-2} \sim k_x^{\frac{3-a}{2}} k_y^{\frac{1-b}{2}}.$$

Critical balance holds if we choose $a = 1$ and $b = 5$. The anisotropic generalisation of the Rhines spectrum obtained via the critical balance argument is

$$E_{\mathbf{k}} = c'' \beta^2 k_x^{-1} k_y^{-5} \quad (149)$$

where c'' is a dimensionless constant. Note how the steep -5 scaling of the Rhines spectrum is now restricted to the zonal direction. The k_y^{-5} dependence was originally proposed by Chekhlov et al. [126] for β -plane turbulence and by Huang et al. [127] on a rotating sphere. The k_x^{-1} dependence is new and, as far as we know, has not been discussed in the literature before. (In fact, the k_x^{-1} factor inevitably follows from the dimensional analysis if one postulates that the k_y -dependence is via k_y^{-5} only). Galperin et al. [128] and Sukoriansky et al. [129] studied the applicability of the k_y^{-5} zonal spectra to the giant planets. They called this regime zonostrophic turbulence owing to its strongly anisotropic character. The k_y^{-5} scaling is difficult to observe over a large range of scales in numerical simulations since its steepness means that this spectrum acts as a vast large scale energy reservoir and therefore requires tremendously long integration times to be established. Nevertheless it seems to be supported by numerical simulations of forced β -plane turbulence and by observations of the flow field on the giant gas planets [8]. In order for this spectrum to be observable, the characteristic wavenumber of the large scale dissipation which ultimately dissipates the energy cascading to large scales should be much less than k_β .

7.2. Discrete and kinetic wave turbulence regimes

Up until now we have largely considered the flow domain to be infinite, treating the wavevector, $\mathbf{k}$, as a continuous variable. In a bounded domain, however, the wavevector becomes discrete. Discreteness introduces a minimum spacing between modes in Fourier space. This has interesting consequences for weakly nonlinear wave turbulence which we discuss in this section. It turns out that there are three qualitatively different regimes of weak wave turbulence (WT), namely kinetic, discrete and mesoscopic [130, 4]. The distinctions between these regimes come down to the relationship between the nonlinear frequency broadening Γ and the frequency spacing Δ_ω .

For small wave amplitudes, the nonlinear frequency broadening is much less than the frequency spacing, $\Gamma \ll \Delta_\omega$. This is discrete WT with a finite number of modes where only waves that are in exact resonance can interact and exchange energy. In the case of Rossby and drift waves these interactions take place between triads of waves whose wavevectors and frequencies must satisfy the resonance conditions

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1 - \mathbf{k}_2 &= 0, \\ \omega(\mathbf{k}) - \omega(\mathbf{k}_1) - \omega(\mathbf{k}_2) &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (150)$$

The wavevectors are discrete variables and, as a result, the resonance conditions (150) may be hard to satisfy and any $\mathbf{k}$ may be a member of only a few resonant triads or a single triad. Resonant triads connected via common modes can be grouped together to form clusters ranging in size from two triads joined via one mode to a multiple-triad cluster involving a complicated network of interconnected triads [131].

If the wave amplitudes are gradually increased, while still retaining a sufficiently low nonlinearity level, the nonlinear frequency broadening will eventually become large, $\Gamma \gg \Delta_\omega$. This condition may also be realized by taking the infinite box limit while keeping the wave amplitudes constant. Then the wave system will be in the kinetic turbulence regime, where the wavevectors are continuous variables and consequently may belong to infinitely many resonant triads. Therefore, for larger amplitudes or large boxes, the number of coupled resonant triads increases considerably eventually creating an infinite cluster containing all the possible triads in the system [4].

Both the discrete and kinetic regimes may coexist if $\Gamma \sim \Delta_\omega$, and the system may oscillate in time or in the $\mathbf{k}$ -space, between the two regimes giving rise to the mesoscopic regime [132, 130, 4] where it has been hypothesized that the wave energy undergoes sandpile behaviour [133] summarized as follows: suppose that the WT has initially very weak or zero intensity, so that it is in the discrete regime. If wave energy is permanently supplied at small $\mathbf{k}$, it will accumulate until the resonance broadening Γ becomes of the order of the frequency spacing Δ_ω . After that the turbulence cascade is released to higher $\mathbf{k}$ in the form of an ‘avalanche’ characterised by predominately kinetic interactions. In the process of the avalanche release, the mean amplitude of the waves is reduced so that the value of broadening Γ becomes less than the frequency spacing Δ_ω . At this point the system returns to the energy accumulation stage in the discrete WT regime and the cycle repeats.

7.3. Conservation Laws and Cascades in the kinetic wave turbulence

All kinetic wave turbulence systems conserve energy and momentum but studies of this regime [66, 67, 134] have found that drift and Rossby wave turbulence conserves not only the usual energy E and enstrophy Q but also a third quadratic invariant in Fourier space that is not a linear combination of the other two, now commonly referred to as *zonostrophy*, Z . It was previously assumed that all wave systems conserve only the energy and enstrophy or that they conserve an infinite number of extra invariants. This discovery was the first example of a wave system with a finite number of additional invariants [67]. The invariant also contains a cubic term whose form depends on the nonlinear interaction coefficient, but for small amplitudes the cubic term can be neglected [135]. Later we will see that zonostrophy is also conserved in discrete wave turbulence and that there are actually many more quadratic invariants in that case.

In terms of the waveaction variable, which is defined as

$$a_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{k^2 + F}{\sqrt{\beta|k_x|}} \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}}, \quad (151)$$

the dynamical equation (97) can be rewritten

$$\partial_t a_{\mathbf{k}} = -i \omega_{\mathbf{k}} a_{\mathbf{k}} + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{\mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2} V_{12}^{\mathbf{k}} \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1 - \mathbf{k}_2) a_{\mathbf{k}_1} a_{\mathbf{k}_2} d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 \quad (152)$$

where

$$V_{12}^{\mathbf{k}} \equiv V_{\mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2}^{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{i}{2} \sqrt{\beta k_x k_{1x} k_{2x}} \left(\frac{k_{1y}}{k_1^2 + F} + \frac{k_{2y}}{k_2^2 + F} - \frac{k_y}{k^2 + F} \right) \quad (153)$$

is the nonlinear interaction coefficient [136]. Like we said before, this symmetric form of the interaction coefficient is valid only on the resonant manifold, which will be sufficient for both the kinetic and the discrete wave turbulence regimes considered below.

Let us return to the wave kinetic equation [137], the main equation governing the kinetic turbulence regime, which in symmetric form is

$$\dot{n}_{\mathbf{k}} = \int_{k_{1x}, k_{2x} > 0} (\mathcal{R}_{12k} - \mathcal{R}_{k12} - \mathcal{R}_{2k1}) d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2, \quad (154)$$

where

$$\mathcal{R}_{12k} = 2\pi |V_{12}^{\mathbf{k}}|^2 \delta_{12}^k \delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}_2}^k) (n_{\mathbf{k}_1} n_{\mathbf{k}_2} - n_{\mathbf{k}} n_{\mathbf{k}_1} - n_{\mathbf{k}} n_{\mathbf{k}_2}). \quad (155)$$

Since in this section we are considering waves in a bi-periodic box, we should think of the kinetic equation as arising in the large box limit, $L \rightarrow \infty$ and re-define the waveaction spectrum in terms of the finite-box Fourier coefficients as $n_{\mathbf{k}} = \lim_{L \rightarrow \infty} \left(\frac{L}{2\pi}\right)^2 |a_{\mathbf{k}}|^2$ (the latter is consistent with the infinite-box definition in terms of the Fourier transform (25)).

Recall that since the CHM equation in physical space is for the streamfunction ψ , a real function, the wavevectors $\mathbf{k}$ and $-\mathbf{k}$ represent the same mode via the property of the Fourier transform of real functions $\hat{\psi}_{-\mathbf{k}} = \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}}^*$. Thus we can choose to work with only half of the Fourier space e.g. $k_x \geq 0$ and will further neglect $k_x = 0$ since this corresponds to zero-frequency zonal flows which are not waves.

In terms of waveaction, the energy and momentum are defined respectively as,

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \int_{k_x > 0} |\omega_{\mathbf{k}}| n_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k}, \\ M &= \int_{k_x > 0} \mathbf{k} n_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k}, \end{aligned} \quad (156)$$

such that $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ can be thought of as the density of the energy and $\mathbf{k}$ the density of the momentum. In particular, the enstrophy corresponds to the x -momentum

$$Q = \int k_x n_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k}. \quad (157)$$

Let us first of all recall how the energy and the momentum conservation laws come about. Using Eq. (154), the rate of change of energy can be written as [4]:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial E}{\partial t} &= \int \omega_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} d\mathbf{k} \\ &= \int \int \int (\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \mathcal{R}_{12k} - \omega_{\mathbf{k}} \mathcal{R}_{k12} - \omega_{\mathbf{k}} \mathcal{R}_{2k1}) d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 d\mathbf{k} \\ &= \int \mathcal{R}_{12k} (\omega_{\mathbf{k}} - \omega_{\mathbf{k}_1} - \omega_{\mathbf{k}_2}) d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 d\mathbf{k}, \end{aligned} \quad (158)$$

where a change of variables $\mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2, \mathbf{k} \mapsto \mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2$ and $\mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_2, \mathbf{k} \mapsto \mathbf{k}_2, \mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1$ have been taken for the second and third terms in the parentheses respectively. Similarly for the enstrophy

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial t} = \int \mathcal{R}_{12k} (\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1 - \mathbf{k}_2) d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 d\mathbf{k}. \quad (159)$$

By virtue of the resonance conditions in Eqs (150), the terms within the parentheses of Eqs (158) and (159) equal zero, showing that energy and enstrophy remain constant in the system. Generally, one can write for a conserved quantity Φ with density $\varphi_{\mathbf{k}}$,

$$\Phi = \int_{k_x > 0} \varphi_{\mathbf{k}} n_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k}, \quad (160)$$

and it follows that

$$\frac{\partial \Phi}{\partial t} = \int_{k_x > 0} \varphi_{\mathbf{k}} \dot{n}_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k} = \int \int \int_{k_x, k_{1x}, k_{2x} > 0} \mathcal{R}_{12k} (\varphi_{\mathbf{k}} - \varphi_{\mathbf{k}_1} - \varphi_{\mathbf{k}_2}) d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2 d\mathbf{k} = 0, \quad (161)$$

if the spectral density satisfies

$$\varphi_{\mathbf{k}} - \varphi_{\mathbf{k}_1} - \varphi_{\mathbf{k}_2} = 0. \quad (162)$$

Such a quantity was found to exist [66, 134, 67] in 1990. The original theory [66, 67] was limited to considering either very large or very small scales (respectively longer or shorter than the Rossby deformation radius or the Larmor radius) or to the scales

which are already anisotropic and are close to zonal, but soon after, the invariant was generalized to the whole of the k -space [134]. It has the form

$$Z = \int_{k_x > 0} \eta_{\mathbf{k}} n_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k},$$

where

$$\eta_{\mathbf{k}} = \arctan \frac{k_y + k_x \sqrt{3}}{\rho k^2} - \arctan \frac{k_y - k_x \sqrt{3}}{\rho k^2}. \quad (163)$$

This extra invariant was named *zonostrophy* in [138] because it is intimately related to the system's zonation and it causes energy to cascade to the zonal scales, as we will see below. The Rossby and drift wave system is a special case of wave turbulence in that the wave kinetic equation exactly conserves an extra quadratic invariant that is not a linear combination of the energy and momentum. Furthermore, it was shown that the zonostrophy could be more significant than the enstrophy since it is less sensitive to dissipation than enstrophy. This is thought to be due to the fact it is dominated by large scale modes, as is the energy while the enstrophy integral is dominated by small scale modes [135, 139]. The identification of the zonostrophy was a significant achievement because such an extra invariant appears to be unique for Rossby and drift wave systems and is not observed in any other known nonlinear wave model.

7.3.1. Small-scale limit

The general expression for zonostrophy appeared to have a form for which the Fjørtoft cascade argument cannot be used since it is neither scale invariant nor sign-definite. In the small-scale limit, $\rho k \rightarrow \infty$, after subtracting the part corresponding to the energy invariant, the zonostrophy density becomes

$$\eta_{\mathbf{k}}^s = - \lim_{\rho \rightarrow \infty} \frac{5\rho^5}{8\sqrt{3}} \left(\varphi_{\mathbf{k}} - 2 \frac{\sqrt{3}\omega}{\beta\rho} \right) = \frac{k_x^3}{k^{10}} (k_x^2 + 5k_y^2). \quad (164)$$

The integral (160) with the density (164) is an exact invariant of the kinetic equation (154) and thus is an approximate invariant of the small-scale CHM equation. The zonostrophy conservation was examined numerically [138] and found to be conserved to within 0.1% for a weakly nonlinear initial condition.

Below we present a generalisation of the famous Fjørtoft argument to triple cascade systems following the method introduced in [66, 67] (see a pedagogical discussion in [4]). We will start with a brief review of the original Fjørtoft argument for 2D turbulence. Fjørtoft [34] deduced the nature of the spectral evolution of the conserved quantities, energy and enstrophy, and demonstrated that when the initial energy is concentrated at the intermediate scale then for later times, more energy is acquired at the larger scale than at the smaller scale i.e. the energy cascade is inverse from larger to smaller wavenumbers. Conversely, the enstrophy cascade is direct to larger wavenumbers. The proof is *ad absurdum* and it is summarised as follows.

Consider 2D isotropic turbulence described by the Navier-Stokes equations, which is generated at some intermediate forcing scale k_0 and dissipated outside the inertial ranges at both very large and very small scales for which $k_- \ll k_0$ and $k_+ \gg k_0$ respectively. The expressions for the conserved quantities, energy and enstrophy in the absence of forcing and dissipation are equivalent to those for the CHM model, Eqs (4) and (5). For steady-state turbulence, the dissipation rates of the energy and enstrophy must be equal the rate at which they are produced. According to Eqs (4) and (5) with $F = 0$, the ratio of the k -space densities is k^2 such that the enstrophy dissipation rate μ is related to the energy dissipation rate ε as $\mu \sim k_0^2 \varepsilon$.

If it is assumed that the energy is dissipated at small scales, k_+ at a rate ε then the enstrophy would have to be dissipated at the rate $k_+^2 \varepsilon$. However this is impossible since it is only produced at a rate of $k_0^2 \varepsilon \ll k_+^2 \varepsilon$. Since the energy must be dissipated at either k_+ or k_- then it can be concluded that it is dissipated at k_- via an inverse cascade through the scales. Similarly, if it is assumed that the enstrophy is dissipated at k_- , then the energy would have to be dissipated at a rate of $\frac{1}{k_-^2} \mu$. Again this rate is a lot greater than $\frac{1}{k_0^2} \mu$, the rate at which it is produced, concluding that the enstrophy must be dissipated at smaller scales or larger wavenumbers k_+ , than those at which it is produced via a direct cascade through the inertial range.

A similar argument can be adopted to determine the direction of the cascade directions of the three conserved quantities of the small-scale CHM model by examining in turn the ratio of the densities of each pair of the invariants [138]. It is also required that each of the three densities are positive since positive and negative amounts of the same quantity would not rule out a possibility of dissipation of that quantity with a net total of zero with the result that the Fjørtoft argument could not be applied.

Let the turbulence be produced near $\mathbf{k}_0 = (k_{0x}, k_{0y})$ and dissipated in regions which are separated in scale from the forcing scale as with the 2D Navier-Stokes turbulence. To divide the 2D $\mathbf{k}$ -space into three non-intersecting regions implies anisotropy. Each invariant will flow to that sector in the 2D $\mathbf{k}$ -space where its density prevails over the others. The boundaries of these sectors are defined where the ratio of the spectral densities of each pair of invariants remains constant to its initial value as detailed below.

- **E-Q boundary:** The energy density is $\frac{k_y}{k^2}$ and that of enstrophy is k_x giving the ratio k^2 as with the 2D Navier-Stokes turbulence. Equating this to its initial value gives

$$k^2 \sim k_0^2, \quad (165)$$

which in the 2D $\mathbf{k}$ -space amounts to a circle of radius k_0 centered at the origin. Using the same argument as before, energy must be dissipated at the larger scales and enstrophy at the small scales.

- **E-Z boundary:** By the inequality $k^2 \leq k_x^2 + 5k_y^2 \leq 5k^2$ we can assume $k_x^2 + 5k_y^2$ scales as k^2 and replace the small-scale zonestrophy density, Eq. (164), with a simpler expression as $\eta_{\mathbf{k}}^s \sim \frac{k_0^3}{k^8}$. Thus the ratio of the energy to zonestrophy densities is

$$\frac{k^3}{k_x} \sim \frac{k_0^3}{k_{0x}}. \quad (166)$$

Since it is already known that the energy accumulates at large scales then this boundary slices that region in two. The zonestrophy density is dominant in the region adjacent to the k_x axis and the energy density in the area adjacent to the k_y axis. In order to accommodate simultaneous conservation of both energy and zonestrophy, the energy should accumulate preferentially close to the zonal axis.

- **Q-Z boundary:** Equating the ratio of the enstrophy density k_x to the zonestrophy density k_x^3/k^8 to the initial value of this ratio gives the boundary separating the enstrophy and the zonestrophy cascades,

$$\frac{k^4}{k_x} \sim \frac{k_0^4}{k_{0x}}. \quad (167)$$

These regions are shown in Fig. 22 where it can be seen that the Q-Z boundary cuts the k_x axis at

$$k_x^* \sim \frac{k_0^{\frac{4}{3}}}{k_{0x}^{\frac{1}{3}}}. \quad (168)$$

thereby restricting the zonestrophy to not too large wavenumbers unless the initial wavenumber is approximately a zonal scale, $k_{0y} \gg k_{0x}$. In particular, if $k_{0y} = k_{0x}$ then $k_x^* = 2^{\frac{1}{6}}k_0$, which means that the maximum allowed wavenumber for the zonestrophy cascade is practically the same as the initial scale. In other words, in this case the zonestrophy can only cascade to the larger scales and not to small scales.

Figure 22. Non-intersecting sectors for triple cascade as predicted by the generalised Fjørtoft argument.

Fjørtoft's argument for the directions of the energy and enstrophy cascades in 2D turbulence is in the presence of forcing and dissipation. However, the boundaries have also been determined in terms of centroids for non-dissipative evolving turbulence [35], which is useful for visualizing the direction of the energy and enstrophy cascades in $\mathbf{k}$ -space (as will be done below). The centroids of E , Q and Z are defined respectively as:

$$\mathbf{k}_E = \frac{1}{E} \int_0^\infty \mathbf{k} \omega_{\mathbf{k}} n_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k}, \quad (169)$$

$$\mathbf{k}_Q = \frac{1}{Q} \int_0^\infty \mathbf{k} k_x n_k d\mathbf{k}, \quad (170)$$

$$\mathbf{k}_Z = \frac{1}{Z} \int_0^\infty \mathbf{k} \eta_k n_k d\mathbf{k}. \quad (171)$$

Numerical study

A pseudo-spectral simulation of the CHM model was employed in [138] to numerically test the theoretical predictions of both the conservation of zonestrophy and the triple cascade behaviour of the small scale turbulence ($F = 0$). The initial condition was taken to be a Gaussian distribution of the stream function defined as

$$\hat{\psi}(\mathbf{k}, 0) = A e^{\left(\frac{|\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_0|^2}{k_x^2} + i\phi_{\mathbf{k}} \right)} + \text{image}, \quad (172)$$

where $\mathbf{k}_0$ is the wavenumber on which the Gaussian is initially centered, A is the amplitude, k_x^2 is the variance and $\phi_{\mathbf{k}}$ are random independent phases. The ‘image’ refers to the mirror-reflected spectrum with respect to the k_x axis.

Zero numerical dissipation has been modelled rather than a forced-dissipated steady state turbulence because there appears to be no physically meaningful dissipation which acts selectively on nearly zonal and nearly meridional scales only. While the triple cascade theory presented in the previous section is based on a forced-dissipative turbulence, it is assumed it is also valid for freely-decaying turbulence as is the case of the dual cascade in 2D Navier-Stokes turbulence. As such, simulations have been carefully monitored to avoid a bottleneck accumulation of turbulence at the maximum wavenumber.

The conservation of energy, enstrophy and zonestrophy and their associated cascades are shown in Fig. 23. Due to the slow weakly nonlinear evolution of this system, any quantity proportional to the turbulence intensity could appear to be conserved, so in addition to the three invariants, a non-conserved quantity, $\int |\psi_{\mathbf{k}}|^2 d\mathbf{k}$ is also plotted in Fig. 23(a) to demonstrate the true conservation of the zonestrophy.

Figure 23. Numerical study of the triple cascade phenomenon for weak nonlinearity: (a) Conservation of energy E , enstrophy Q and zonestrophy Z . The inset shows the zoom on the values around 1. Non-conserved quantity $\int \psi^2 dx dy$ is also shown and (b) the cascades of each invariant tracked by their centroids

It is clear that all three invariants, E , Q and Z are well conserved, the energy to within 0.01%, the enstrophy to within 0.15% and the zonestrophy is conserved to within 1%. This is a numerical demonstration of the conservation of the zonestrophy invariant. It should be remembered that Z is precisely conserved by the wave kinetic equation, Eq. (154), and therefore its conservation by the dynamical CHM equation, Eq. (97), is subject to the conditions of applicability of the kinetic equation, namely weak nonlinearity and the random phases. It is not clear *a priori* how well these conditions are satisfied throughout the $\mathbf{k}$ -space, particularly near the zonal scales.

The centroids of E , Q and Z are normalised by their initial values so that Fig. 23(b) shows the three centroid paths starting from the same point. Each invariant cascades into its predicted sector. The enstrophy and zonestrophy cascades are well within their respective sector while the energy follows the boundary of its sector with the zonestrophy sector.

Three successive frames of the energy spectrum in 2D k -space are shown in Fig. 24 and of vorticity distributions in x -space at corresponding times in Fig. 25. The initial spectrum, which represents the Gaussian spot as defined by Eq. 172, centered at

Figure 24. Numerical study of the triple cascade phenomenon for weak nonlinearity: 2D energy spectrum at (a) $t = 0$ (b) $t = 100$ and (c) $t = 40000$

$\mathbf{k}_0$ and its mirror image in Fig. 24(a), seems to grow branches in panel (b) which stretch toward the origin forming a closed band which subsequently starts shrinking in size. These features are probably indicative of the structure of the anisotropic inverse energy cascade process. In the respective vorticity x -plots in Fig. 25, the initial dominant shortwave components are evident in panel (a), propagating at $\pm 45^\circ$ corresponding to the position of the initial maxima in the spectrum. These waves evolve into a more disordered turbulent state with a predominant zonal orientation as seen in panel (c), similar to the off-zonal flows observed for the weakly nonlinear MI study.

Figure 25. Weak nonlinearity. Vorticity distribution at (a) $t = 0$ (b) $t = 100$ and (c) $t = 40000$

7.3.2. Large-scale limit, $\rho \rightarrow 0$

In the large-scale limit, $\rho^2 k^2 \ll 1$ the zonostrophy density originally found in [66, 67] is

$$\eta_{\mathbf{k}}^L = \frac{k_x^3}{(k_y^2 - 3k_x^2)}. \quad (173)$$

However, it was found recently by Saito and Ishioka [140] that the exact limiting expression of the general formula for the zonostrophy, Eq. (163), is

$$\varphi_{\mathbf{k}} = -2\sqrt{3}\rho k_x - 8\sqrt{3}\rho \frac{k_x^3}{(k_y^2 - 3k_x^2)} + O(\rho^2) \quad \text{for } |k_y| > \sqrt{3}k_x, \quad (174)$$

$$\varphi_{\mathbf{k}} = -\pi - 2\sqrt{3}\rho k_x - 8\sqrt{3}\rho \frac{k_x^3}{(k_y^2 - 3k_x^2)} + O(\rho^2) \quad \text{for } |k_y| < \sqrt{3}k_x, \quad (175)$$

and

$$\varphi_{\mathbf{k}} = -\pi/2 - 2\sqrt{3}\rho k_x - 8\sqrt{3}\rho \frac{k_x^3}{(k_y^2 - 3k_x^2)} + O(\rho^2) \quad \text{for } |k_y| = \sqrt{3}k_x, \quad (176)$$

Performing a similar expansion in the dispersion relation (10), we have

$$\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = -\rho^2 k_x + \rho^4 k_x k^2 + O(\rho^6), \quad (177)$$

which can be replaced with a simpler expression for an effective dispersion relation which satisfies the same three-wave resonance condition:

$$\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = k_x k^2 + O(\rho^2). \quad (178)$$

Note that the order ρ^1 is missing in this expression. Thus, we actually have two extra invariants for the dispersion relation $\omega_{\mathbf{k}} = k_x k^2$, because the resonant conditions for the quantities (174)–(176) must be satisfied independently in the orders ρ^0 and ρ^1 respectively. Namely, the order ρ^1 gives the zonostrophy invariant (173), whereas the order ρ^0 gives another invariant [140]

$$\Lambda = \int \zeta_{\mathbf{k}} n_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k}$$

with spectral density $\zeta_{\mathbf{k}}$ defined as

$$\zeta_{\mathbf{k}} = 0 \quad \text{for } |k_y| > \sqrt{3}k_x, \quad (179)$$

$$\zeta_{\mathbf{k}} = 1 \quad \text{for } |k_y| < \sqrt{3}k_x, \quad (180)$$

and

$$\zeta_{\mathbf{k}} = 1/2 \quad \text{for } |k_y| = \sqrt{3}k_x. \quad (181)$$

We will call this extra invariant *semi-action* because its density coincides with the one of the wave action in the sector where it is not zero. The existence of the semi-action invariant has profound consequences for large-scale Rossby/drift wave turbulence. Let us consider a non-dissipative unforced system and suppose that the initial spectrum is zero inside of the sector $|k_y| < \sqrt{3}k_x$. Then it is clear that for any time the spectrum must remain zero inside the sector $|k_y| < \sqrt{3}k_x$ – else the conservation of the semi-action would be violated (ie. it would take a finite positive value which is different from its initial zero value). On the other hand, if we consider a forced-dissipated system then it is clear that the semi-action can only be created and dissipated inside the sector $|k_y| < \sqrt{3}k_x$ because (like the spectral density of the semi-action itself) its forcing and dissipation densities are zero outside of this sector.

Let us now consider the effect of the zonostrophy invariant on the turbulence properties. In the limit $|k_y| \gg k_x$ the integral (173) becomes positive and the triple cascade argument can be used [66, 67] (For a pedagogical discussion of this limit see [4], section 8.2.3). The application of this argument is similar to what we have done above for the small-scale turbulence, and the outcome is also similar: that the inverse cascade is anisotropic with tendency to create large-scale zonal flows. In fact, the limit $|k_y| \gg k_x$ can be relaxed to $|k_y| > \sqrt{3}k_x$ taking into account the property that the spectrum excited only inside such a sector will not propagate outside of it and, therefore, the zonostrophy integral will remain sign-definite (positive). See the result in Fig. 3 of [67]. Actually in the case when the forcing is in the sector $|k_y| < \sqrt{3}k_x$ the triple cascade argument can also be used because the energy and the potential enstrophy invariants restrict the flux of zonostrophy to the sector $|k_y| < \sqrt{3}k_x$ where the zonostrophy is also sign-definite (negative). See the result in Fig. 2 of [67].

Finally in this section we would like to mention the numerical results of Saito and Ishioka [140] for the large-scale CHM turbulence evolving out of an isotropic initial spectrum. It appears that such a spectrum tends to accumulate in the sectors $|k_y| > \sqrt{3}k_x$ and near the lines $|k_y| = \sqrt{3}k_x$, ie. the lines on which the spectral density of the zonostrophy invariant is singular and the density of the semi-action invariant is discontinuous. This agrees with the simple analytical argument presented above that the state where the spectrum is finite only in the sectors $|k_y| > \sqrt{3}k_x$ is stable: the energy and the other invariants cannot leave this sector and dissipate outside of it. Another qualitative explanation of the spectrum near the lines $|k_y| = \sqrt{3}k_x$ will be given in section 8.1 when we consider consequences of nonlocal interactions with zonal flows.

7.4. Discrete WT

In the discrete turbulence regime, resonant and quasi-resonant clusters are described by a system of dynamical equations which in terms of the interaction representation variable, $b_{\mathbf{k}}$ can be rewritten as:

$$i\dot{b}_{\mathbf{k}} = \sum_{1,2} (V_{12}^{\mathbf{k}} \delta_{12}^{\mathbf{k}} b_1 b_2 e^{-i\omega_{12}^{\mathbf{k}} t} + 2V_{\mathbf{k}2}^{1*} \delta_{\mathbf{k}2}^1 b_2^* b_1 e^{i\omega_{\mathbf{k}2}^1 t}), \quad (182)$$

where the triad detuning parameter, $\omega_{12}^{\mathbf{k}} = \omega_{\mathbf{k}} - \omega_{\mathbf{k}_1} - \omega_{\mathbf{k}_2}$, measures the deviation of each triad from exact resonance. This set of equations can be divided into independent subsets, called *clusters*. Each cluster evolves independently of the others and conservation properties hold independently for each cluster. This division and independence of the clusters from each other become asymptotically precise as the nonlinearity tends to zero, in which case the quasi-resonances sharpen and tend to exact wave resonances. The independence of clusters from each other arises from the property that in finite-sized systems the resonant manifold

splits into a set of isolated resonant or quasi-resonant clusters ranging in size from individual triads to much larger multiple-triad clusters.

The simplest possible cluster consisting of one quasi-resonant triad is described by the following equations,

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{b}_1 &= W^* b_2^* b_3 e^{i\omega_{12}^3 t}, \\ \dot{b}_2 &= W^* b_1^* b_3 e^{i\omega_{12}^3 t}, \\ \dot{b}_3 &= -W b_1 b_2 e^{-i\omega_{12}^3 t},\end{aligned}\tag{183}$$

where $W = 2iV_{12}^3$.

For a cluster consisting of $m = 1, \dots, M$ triads and $n = 1, \dots, N$ modes with amplitudes $b_n(t)$, it has been shown that finding quadratic invariants is equivalent to an underlying basic linear algebra problem [35], consisting of finding the null space of a rectangular $M \times N$ cluster matrix A in which the rows correspond to the triads and the columns – to the wave modes. In each row there only three nonzero entries: one -1 entry at the position of the active mode (the one that decays) and two 1 entries at the positions of the passive mode (the ones arising from the active mode's decay). Then the three-wave resonance conditions for $\mathbf{k}$ for the m th triad, defined in (150) can be put into the following matrix form:

$$\sum_{n=1}^N A_{mn} \mathbf{k}_n = \mathbf{0}, \quad m \text{ fixed, } m = 1, \dots, M\tag{184}$$

where for each fixed m the set $\{A_{mn}\}_{n=1}^N$ contains exactly two elements with value 1 , one element with value -1 , and the remaining elements are equal to zero. If $\varphi \equiv (\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \dots, \varphi_N)^T$ is the null space of the cluster matrix then

$$\sum_{n=1}^N A_{mn} \varphi_n = 0,\tag{185}$$

for all triads in the cluster and there exists a quadratic invariant of the system, I defined as

$$I = \sum_{n=1}^N \varphi_n |b_n(t)|^2.\tag{186}$$

By taking the time derivative of Eq. (186) and substituting for $\dot{b}_n$ using (182), it follows that if $\varphi_3 - \varphi_1 - \varphi_2 = 0$ for every term in the sum then $\dot{I} \equiv 0$ (see the details in [35]). The condition for existence of an invariant is similar therefore for discrete WT as for kinetic WT, namely the spectral density of the quadratic invariant must satisfy the resonance conditions (150) for each triad in the cluster (recall that for the resonant triads both wavenumber and the frequencies are in exact resonance, whereas for quasi-resonant triads the frequency resonance is approximate).

The number of independent quadratic invariants of a cluster in discrete WT is equal to $J \equiv N - M^* \geq N - M$ where M^* is the number of linearly independent triads/rows in A , so $M^* \leq M$. The resonance conditions are much harder to satisfy in a discrete system and therefore there are fewer triads than in the kinetic or quasi-resonant case. Hence $N - M$ increases and there are many more invariants in discrete WT than in kinetic WT. Typically in kinetic WT, the only invariants that remain are the ones corresponding to the physical energy with density $\varphi_{\mathbf{k}} = \omega_{\mathbf{k}}$, the momenta with density $\varphi_{\mathbf{k}}$ equal to each of the d components of the wavevector $\mathbf{k}$ and, in the case of Rossby/drift waves, zonostrophy.

It is natural to ask how the energy, momentum and zonostrophy appear in discrete clusters. Starting with the smallest, for an isolated, exactly resonant triad the number of linearly independent quadratic invariants $J = N - M = 2$ which correspond to the Manley-Rowe invariants and as a result the energy with density $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$, the two components of momentum with density (k_x, k_y) and the zonostrophy with density $\varphi_{\mathbf{k}}$ will not be independent of one another. Only two may be linearly independent. To see this consider the Manley-Rowe invariants,

$$\begin{aligned}I_1 &= |b_1|^2 + |b_3|^2, \\ I_2 &= |b_2|^2 + |b_3|^2,\end{aligned}$$

Seeking an extra invariant

$$I = \varphi_1 |b_1|^2 + \varphi_2 |b_2|^2 + \varphi_3 |b_3|^2.$$

and substituting in $\varphi_3 = \varphi_1 + \varphi_2$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}I &= \varphi_1 (|b_1|^2 + |b_3|^2) + \varphi_2 (|b_2|^2 + |b_3|^2), \\ &= \varphi_1 I_1 + \varphi_2 I_2,\end{aligned}$$

ie. any such invariant is linearly dependent on the two Manley-Rowe invariants.

Two triads connected by one mode, commonly referred to as a butterfly (see bottom right of Fig. 26), have three invariants in total. As a result zonostrophy does not appear as an extra invariant to the energy, and the two momentum components. For larger, three-triad clusters with four invariants, the zonostrophy does appear as an extra invariant since k_x, k_y, ω_k and η_k are linearly independent of one another. For larger clusters there may be many more invariants than these four. Unlike the triple cascade previously presented for the kinetic WT regime, it is not yet clear how the discrete regime is affected by the presence of extra invariants. Numerical simulations of Rossby and drift WT in large discrete clusters could determine how the behaviour is different from their counterparts in kinetic WT and how the presence of numerous additional quadratic invariant affects the turbulent cascades. There is currently no understanding of additional invariants in the mesoscopic WT regime.

7.4.1. Small-scale Rossby and drift wave clusters

In the small-scale limit, $\rho k \rightarrow \infty$, the wave dispersion relation, Eq. (10) reduces to $-\frac{\beta k_x}{k^2}$. Considering the region $1 \leq k_x \leq 100$ and $-100 \leq k_y \leq 100$, a total of thirty-four clusters are found numerically, seventeen clusters plus their mirror images. This consists of twenty-four isolated triads, four butterflies, two triple-chains, two seven-triad clusters and two thirteen-triad clusters [35]; see Fig. 26.

7.4.2. Large-scale Rossby and drift wave clusters

For large scale waves, $\rho^2 k^2 \ll 1$, the leading order term in the Taylor expansion of Eq. (10) in $\rho^2 k^2$ is

$$\omega_k = -k_x \rho^2 (1 - \rho^2 k^2). \quad (187)$$

Since the first part in this expression is proportional to k_x ; for the purpose of finding the resonances, the simpler expression satisfying the same resonant condition is taken:

$$\omega_k = k_x k^2. \quad (188)$$

In the region $1 \leq k_x \leq 20$ and $-20 \leq k_y \leq 20$, a total of four clusters are found numerically. This consists of two isolated triads, one ten-triad cluster and one 104-triad cluster, the latter coupling 178 wave modes [35]. Note that, even in a much smaller domain for the large-scale limit, a much larger cluster exists than for the small-scale limit indicating that the resonance conditions are much easier to satisfy in the large-scale limit than in the small-scale limit. The 104-triad cluster has in total 76 quadratic invariants, which is a huge number comparing to the invariants of non-resonant systems, and which must have a profound effect on the dynamics! Exploring such an effect could be done by a numerical experiment, which is an exciting subject for future study.

8. Wave Turbulence – Zonal Flow feedback loop

The initial evolution of Rossby and drift wave turbulence and the subsequent generation of a zonal flow by MI or the anisotropic inverse cascade, as told so far, is only half the story however. It is natural to ask how this large-scale zonal flow affects the turbulence at small-scales, which generates it. It is now generally accepted in both the fields of plasma physics and GFD that in the turbulence of Rossby and drift waves the dominant interaction is with a zonal flow rather than a neighbouring-scale interaction [15, 16, 14, 17, 18, 4], such that studies of drift wave turbulence now imply the study of the drift wave turbulence - ZF feedback mechanism [15, 16, 28, 94, 14] which can be summarised as follows.

Rossby waves and drift waves are produced by a primary instability, for example, the ion-temperature-gradient (ITG) instability in plasmas or the baroclinic instability in the atmospheres and oceans. These waves are predominantly meridional. A ZF is generated via a secondary modulational instability of these waves and they grow by a direct interaction with the small scale waves. The growing ZF extracts energy from the wave turbulence and thereby eventually suppresses it at the small scales. Additionally, ZF stretches the small-scale wavepackets making them even smaller in scale, so that they decay even faster in the range of very small dissipative scales.

The WT-ZF feedback mechanism was first discovered theoretically [15, 16, 28] within a WT approach based on a wave-kinetic equation and postulating nonlocality of the scale interactions occurring directly with large zonal scales. The nonlocality assumption was guided by the fact of divergence of the collision integral on the KZ spectra. The original dynamical model was CHM, Eq. (1) with an instability forcing i.e. $\gamma_k \neq 0$ in Eq. (23).

A brief summary of the extended explanation of these early works which was given recently in [141] is presented here, and the mechanism was confirmed numerically by DNS of the forced/dissipated CHM [142] and EHM models.

On the other hand, a candidate mechanism for suppressing small-scale turbulence via shearing of small vortices by the ZF was put forward in [94]. Their argument evoked a mechanism typical for 2D incompressible fluid and therefore it was relevant to the strongly turbulent vortex-dominated regime rather than WT. The conditions under which the WT or the vortex dominated regimes can be realised in real fusion devices, as well as the respective laws for saturated ZF strength were discussed in [142].

8.1. Nonlocal evolution of CHM turbulence

To study the nonlocal interaction between wavenumbers $\mathbf{k}$ and zonal flows, the points of most interest are those two where the resonant manifold crosses the zonal scales, i.e. $k_{1x} = 0$ axis, as shown in Fig. 1. One of those points is the origin which describes the interaction with large-scale flows such that $\mathbf{k}_1 = (0, 0)$. The other point can be determined by setting $k_{1x} = 0$ in the resonance Eq. (150), which gives the wavevector $\mathbf{k}_1 = (0, 2k_y)$. The interactions with the wavenumbers in the vicinity of these points give the main contributions to the collision integral, Eq. (67).

8.1.1. Nonlocal interaction with large-scale zonal flows

Looking first at the interactions of $\mathbf{k}$ with the large-scale zonal flows near the origin. These large-scale waves travel with the x -component of the phase speed,

$$c_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{\omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{k_x} = -\frac{\beta}{k^2 + F}. \quad (189)$$

In the large-scale limit, $k \ll F$, $c_{\mathbf{k}} \rightarrow -\beta/F$ and the absolute value of this is known as the drift velocity or Rossby velocity. It is convenient therefore to work in a coordinate frame moving with this velocity, in which the Doppler-shifted frequency is given as

$$\Omega_{\mathbf{k}} = \omega_{\mathbf{k}} - c_{\mathbf{k}}k_x = \frac{\beta k_x k^2}{F(k^2 + F)}. \quad (190)$$

In this moving reference frame, the kinetic equation becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = 4\pi \int & |V_{12}^{\mathbf{k}}|^2 \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1 - \mathbf{k}_2) \delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}} - \Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1} - \Omega_{\mathbf{k}_2}) \times \\ & [n_{\mathbf{k}_1} n_{\mathbf{k}_2} - n_{\mathbf{k}} n_{\mathbf{k}_1} \text{sign}(\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \omega_{\mathbf{k}_2}) - n_{\mathbf{k}} n_{\mathbf{k}_2} \text{sign}(\omega_{\mathbf{k}} \omega_{\mathbf{k}_1})] d\mathbf{k}_1 d\mathbf{k}_2. \end{aligned} \quad (191)$$

A detailed analysis, as outlined in the appendix A, reduces this kinetic equation to a diffusion equation

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial k_y} D_{\mathbf{k}} \left(\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right) \right)_{\Omega} \quad (192)$$

where $(\dots)_{\Omega}$ means Ω being held constant and the diffusion coefficient is

$$D_{\mathbf{k}} = 2\pi \left| \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} \right|^{-2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[|V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}}|^2 k_{1y}^2 \right]_{k_{1x} = -\sigma_{\mathbf{k}} k_{1y}} n_{\mathbf{k}_1} dk_{1y}. \quad (193)$$

Eq. 192 therefore describes diffusion in the k_y direction along the curves of constant $\Omega(k_x, k_y)$ which are shown in Fig. 27(a).

The mathematically predicted evolution of the turbulence spectrum, Eq. (192) provides some insight into the features of the nonlocal turbulence. The energy of the small scale waves with dispersion $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ is defined as,

$$E = \int |\omega_{\mathbf{k}}| n_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k}. \quad (194)$$

As the spectrum of these small scales diffuses along the curves of constant $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}}$, it loses energy since $\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ decreases along these curves. However for an unforced, dissipation-less turbulence, the total energy of the system must be conserved, therefore this energy from the small scales has to go somewhere and must therefore be transferred to larger scales. If there is no dissipation at these large scales the energy spectrum will accumulate there. Furthermore, since the diffusion coefficient $D_{\mathbf{k}}$ given by Eq. (193) is directly proportional to k_y , the rate of transfer of energy from the small wavepackets to the large scales is also increased.

For a forced and dissipative turbulence regime, the evolution of the spectrum will be determined by the forcing and dissipation terms, collectively denoted as $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}$, added to the RHS of Eq. (192) i.e.

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial k_y} D_{\mathbf{k}} \left(\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right) \right)_{\Omega} + \gamma_{\mathbf{k}} n_{\mathbf{k}}. \quad (195)$$

Note from Eq. (193) that the diffusion coefficient D , depends on the spectrum of the zonal flow, $n_{\mathbf{k}_1}$. If this spectrum is given then D is a fixed function of k_y and Ω . The spectrum $n_{\mathbf{k}}$ evolves along the curves of constant $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ and its magnitude is controlled by the eigenvalue Γ_{Ω} of the eigenvalue problem on each curve $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}} = \text{const}$ with maximum value of $n_{\mathbf{k}}$ on that curve growing exponentially if $\Gamma_{\Omega} > 0$, and being damped exponentially if $\Gamma_{\Omega} < 0$ [15, 16]. Positive values of Γ_{Ω} occur on the curves $\Omega = \text{const}$ passing near the maximum of the forcing $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}$ while negative Γ_{Ω} occurs far away from this maximum where dissipation terms are dominant.

For positive Γ_{Ω} , the spectrum $n_{\mathbf{k}}$ grows on the curve of constant $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ but this growth cannot be sustained indefinitely as it has already been stated that diffusion of the spectrum along these curves results in energy transfer to large scales. Since this results

in a large diffusion coefficient and augmented diffusion to the dissipation region, the growth of the spectrum due to positive Γ_Ω is gradually relaxed until a balance is achieved between the growth and the diffusion. This corresponds to the moment when the region of curves $\Omega_k = \text{const}$ with positive Γ_Ω shrinks to a single curve, and the maximum value of Γ_Ω (corresponding to the last remaining curve) lowers to zero. Consequently, the large-scale zonal flow saturates at a level which can be estimated by balancing the forcing and diffusion terms of Eq. (195), which gives

$$n_p \sim \frac{\beta \gamma_{\max}}{4\pi p^3 |V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}}|^2}, \quad (196)$$

where for large scales $p_x \sim p_y \sim p$. Again, using the fact that $n_p = \frac{E_p}{\omega_p}$ whereby in the large-scale limit,

$$E_p \approx \frac{F}{p^2} \psi^2 \quad (197)$$

and $U_{ZF} = \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial y} \sim p\psi$, another expression can be obtained for n_p

$$n_p \sim \frac{F^2 U_{ZF}^2}{p^5 \beta}. \quad (198)$$

Equating Eqs (196) and (198), and deducing from Eq. (153) that $|V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}}|^2 \sim \frac{\beta p^3}{F}$, the large-scale zonal flow is estimated to saturate at the velocity

$$U_{ZF} \sim \sqrt{\beta \gamma_{\max} L / (\pi F)}, \quad (199)$$

where $L \sim \frac{1}{p}$.

This estimate, Eq. (199) is valid for weak turbulence only, $U_{ZF} \ll \beta$, since its derivation stems from the kinetic equation. For strong turbulence, the β term is negligible and Eq. (199) is invalid. An alternative zonal flow saturation velocity for the strong turbulence regime will be determined later.

8.1.2. Nonlocal interaction with small-scale zonal flows

A similar analysis is performed in appendix A for the nonlocal interaction with small-scale zonal flows. It yields the diffusion equation

$$\frac{\partial n_k}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial Z_k}{\partial k_y} \frac{\partial}{\partial k_x} \left(\left(\frac{\partial Z_k}{\partial k_y} \right)^{-1} \left(\frac{\partial \Omega_k}{\partial k_y} \right)^{-1} \tilde{B}(\mathbf{k}) \left(\frac{\partial n_k}{\partial k_x} \right)_Z \right), \quad (200)$$

where $\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial k_x} \right)_Z$ means differentiation with respect to k_x with Z_k being held constant. Here

$$\tilde{B}(\mathbf{k}) = 4\pi \left| \frac{\partial \Omega_k}{\partial k_y} \right|^{-1} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dq_x \left[|V_{\mathbf{q}, \mathbf{k}-\mathbf{q}}^{\mathbf{k}}|^2 n(-q_x, q_y) q_x^2 \right]_{q_y=2k_y}. \quad (201)$$

Eqs (200) and (201) describe diffusion along curves of constant Z_k , defined as

$$Z_k = \arctan \left(\frac{(k_y + \sqrt{3} k_x) \sqrt{F}}{k^2} \right) - \arctan \left(\frac{(k_y - \sqrt{3} k_x) \sqrt{F}}{k^2} \right) - \frac{2\sqrt{3} F k_x}{k^2 + F}, \quad (202)$$

and which are shown in Fig. 27(b). Note that near $\mathbf{k} = 0$ these curves focus onto the same lines $k_y = \pm \sqrt{3} k_x$. We have already pointed out the significance of this line in Sec. 7.3.2 when we discussed the role of the zonestrophy invariant in the large-scale limit of CHM turbulence. In fact it is easy to see that the expression for Z_k is nothing but the linear combination of the spectral densities of the zonestrophy (163) and the energy. Now we have another perspective of why the numerically observed spectrum tends to accumulate near the lines $k_y = \pm \sqrt{3} k_x$: the nonlocal interaction with the zonal flows leads to the spectrum evolution along the curves, which compresses the turbulence onto these lines, thereby enhancing its value.

8.2. Qualitative WKB description of zonal flow growth

The foregoing rigorous mathematical theory is based on the wave kinetic equation and is therefore valid only in the weak wave turbulence regime which requires that the quasi-zonal scale turbulence be weak. However an alternative theory which is similar to Wentzel-Kramers-Brillouin (WKB) theory and which does not require a weak turbulence assumption, was introduced in [143], extended in [4], and is now presented. The presentation of both theories provides a unified picture of both strong and weak wave turbulence regimes.

Consider a drift wave packet propagating on the background zonal flow with a velocity profile $U(y)$ which varies randomly in y . The correlation length L corresponds to a typical wavelength profile in $U(y)$. Again nonlocal drift turbulence is assumed, so that interactions between the drift waves themselves are negligible in comparison to their interactions with the zonal flow.

The evolution equation for the small-scale drift and Rossby waves is obtained by considering Eq. (12) at large $\mathbf{k}$, neglecting the terms describing the interactions with the other high $\mathbf{k}$'s (i.e. ignoring the mutual interactions within the small-scale component considering it to be weak compared to the interactions with the large scales), multiplying the resulting equation by $\hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}'}$, averaging over the fast times and Fourier transforming over $\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}'$ (in order to transfer the slow coordinate dependence into the physical space while leaving the short scales in the $\mathbf{k}$ -space). The resulting evolution equation is [143]:

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \frac{\partial \bar{\omega}_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial \mathbf{k}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{x}} + \frac{\partial \bar{\omega}_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{k}} \right) n_{\mathbf{k}} = 0, \quad (203)$$

$\bar{\omega}_{\mathbf{k}}$ is the total frequency of the drift wave packet due to its own linear dispersion plus that due to the motion of the large scale zonal flow [143],

$$\bar{\omega}_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{k_x(Uk^2 + \beta)}{k^2 + F}, \quad (204)$$

and

$$n_{\mathbf{k}} \equiv n(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{x}, t) = \frac{k^2(1 + \rho^2 k^2)}{8\pi^2} \int e^{i\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{x}} \langle \hat{\psi}_{\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{p}/2} \hat{\psi}_{-\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{p}/2} \rangle d\mathbf{p}$$

is the local density of the small-scale waveaction (defined via Wigner's function) which appears to be the local density of the enstrophy. It is related to the local density of the small-scale energy, $e_{\mathbf{k}}$, via the usual 2D turbulence relation: $n_{\mathbf{k}} = k^2 e_{\mathbf{k}}$. Recall that from WT we would expect a different relation, $n_{\mathbf{k}} = e_{\mathbf{k}}/\omega_{\mathbf{k}}$. Naturally, the two expressions coincide when the assumptions of the scale separation and the turbulence weakness are fulfilled simultaneously. Indeed in this case, as we established above, the waves evolve along the $\mathbf{k}$ -space curves $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}} = \text{constant}$, which happen to be the same as the curves $k^2 \omega_{\mathbf{k}} = \text{constant}$.

The term within the parentheses of Eq. (203) is a time derivative along the wave rays [143, 144] defined as

$$D_t = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \dot{\mathbf{x}} \cdot \nabla + \dot{\mathbf{k}} \cdot \nabla, \quad (205)$$

where

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{\partial \bar{\omega}_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial \mathbf{k}}, \quad \dot{\mathbf{k}} = -\frac{\partial \bar{\omega}_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}. \quad (206)$$

It then follows from Eqs (203) and (205) that

$$\dot{k}_x = -\frac{\partial \bar{\omega}}{\partial x} = 0, \quad \dot{k}_y = -\frac{\partial \bar{\omega}}{\partial y} = \frac{k_x k^2 U'}{k^2 + F}, \quad (207)$$

where $' \equiv \frac{\partial}{\partial y}$ and

$$\dot{y} = \frac{\partial \bar{\omega}}{\partial k_y} = \frac{2k_x k_y (F U - \beta)}{(k^2 + F)^2}. \quad (208)$$

For completeness, we will also write an equation for the large-scale (possibly zonal, but not necessarily) flow, $\psi_L = \langle \psi \rangle$, which is obtained averaging the CHM Eq. (6) over the characteristic times of the small scales [143]:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\nabla^2 \psi_L - F \psi_L) + \frac{\partial \psi_L}{\partial x} + M \left[\frac{\partial \psi_L}{\partial x} \frac{\partial \nabla^2 \psi}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial \psi_L}{\partial y} \frac{\partial \nabla^2 \psi_L}{\partial x} \right] = \partial_{xx} \mathcal{A} + \partial_{xy} \mathcal{B} - \partial_{yy} \mathcal{A}, \quad (209)$$

where

$$\mathcal{A} = 2M \int \frac{k_x k_y}{k^2 (F + k^2)} n_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{B} = 2M \int \frac{k_y^2 - k_x^2}{k^2 (F + k^2)} n_{\mathbf{k}} d\mathbf{k}. \quad (210)$$

As we see, Eq. (209) differs from the original non-averaged Eq. (6) by presence of extra terms on the right-hand side representing radiative forcing of the large-scale component by the small-scale component. It is these forcing terms that are responsible for transferring the energy from the small to the large scales and vice versa.

8.2.1. Weak zonal flow

Assuming that the zonal flow is sufficiently weak, $U \ll \beta$, the drift wavepacket can travel through many correlation lengths in the y -direction. The wavepacket will experience a random walk in k_y so that the evolution of the mean waveaction $n_{\mathbf{k}}$ will be described by a diffusion equation,

$$n = \frac{\partial}{\partial k_y} \left(D_{rw} \frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right) + \gamma_k n, \quad (211)$$

where γ_k describes the instability in the unstable region where $\gamma_k > 0$ and $\gamma_k < 0$ in the dissipative region. The diffusion coefficient D_{rw} can be estimated from a standard random walk argument,

$$D_{rw} = \left(\frac{1}{\dot{k}_y} \right)^2 \tau, \quad (212)$$

where τ is the correlation time estimated as

$$\tau = \frac{L}{|\dot{y}|}. \quad (213)$$

Inserting Eq. (208) into Eq. (213) and then into Eq. (212), the random walk diffusion coefficient is estimated to be

$$D_{rw} = \frac{k^4 U^2}{2\beta}, \quad (214)$$

where the estimates $k_x \sim k_y (\sim k\sqrt{2})$ and $U' \sim U/L$ have been used. Then the characteristic time of the diffusion process is

$$\tau_{dif} = \frac{k_y^2}{D} = \frac{\beta L}{k^2 U^2}. \quad (215)$$

Assuming that the zonal flow is excited by drift wave turbulence via an inverse cascade until a saturated value is reached, the saturation value can be determined by balancing the diffusion and instability terms in Eq. (211) which gives

$$\frac{D}{k_y^2} = \gamma_{max}, \quad (216)$$

where γ_{max} is the maximum value of the growth rate of the underlying instability. Substituting Eq. (214) into Eq. (216), the estimated saturation velocity of the zonal flow is

$$U_{dif} = \frac{\sqrt{\beta \gamma_{max} L}}{k}. \quad (217)$$

This estimate coincides with our previously obtained Eq. (199) if $k \sim \sqrt{F}$.

8.2.2. Strong zonal flow

In the case of a strong zonal flow the β -effect is less important so that the DWP will travel through $O(1)$ correlation lengths, getting carried from the unstable region to the dissipative region in a shorter time than it would take to cross one zonal flow oscillation of length L . The characteristic time for these rapid distortions follows from Eq. (207),

$$\tau_{rd} \sim \frac{k_y}{\dot{k}_y} \sim \frac{(k^2 + F)L}{k^2 U}. \quad (218)$$

This rapid distortion will occur when τ_{rd} is less than the time needed for the wavepacket to cross one ZL oscillation, $\tau_{rd} < \tau_{dif}$ or equivalently

$$U > \frac{\beta}{k^2 + F}. \quad (219)$$

Using Eq. (217) in this expression, we get the following condition for when rapid distortion is expected,

$$L\gamma_{max} > \frac{k^2 \beta}{(k^2 + F)^2}. \quad (220)$$

Saturation ZF velocity in the rapid distortion regime is expected when the inverse of its characteristic time becomes similar to the instability growth rate, $\gamma_{max} \sim \frac{1}{\tau_{rd}}$ which gives

$$U_{rd} = \left(1 + \frac{F}{k^2} \right) L\gamma_{max}. \quad (221)$$

From Eq. (220) it is clear that transition between the diffusive and rapid distortion regimes for zonal flow saturation occurs when the strength of the instability reaches $\gamma_c = \frac{k^2 \beta}{(k^2 + F)^2 L}$; see Fig. 28.

8.3. Numerical validation of the WT/ZF feedback loop

The presented above picture of the drift/Rossby wave turbulence coupled with ZF was tested numerically in [142]. As previously mentioned, the CHM equation does not contain small-scale instabilities but the forcing can be modeled by modifying the dispersion as in Eq. (23). For the instability forcing $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}$, the simplest form was sought in [142] which retains the key features of the relevant primary instabilities mentioned above, namely that they act at small scales and primarily generate meridional waves. Here, it is modeled as $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} = \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^+ - \nu_m k^{2m}$ where $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^+$ is the instability forcing term and ν_m a hyperviscosity coefficient. Dissipation $\nu_m(-\Delta)^m$ is a typical hyperviscosity for turbulence simulations with $m \in \mathbb{N}$. In various physical situations, the region of instability which leads to drift waves turns out to be approximately the same [16, 145, 146] and also coincides with the region determined by the linear instability analysis of the two-layer quasi-geostrophic model. A dimensionless parameter is introduced

$$\chi = \frac{\gamma_{\max} \sqrt{F}}{\beta}, \quad (222)$$

which measures the nonlinearity of the system (here $\gamma_{\max} = \max(\gamma_{\mathbf{k}})$). Results are presented for an idealised narrowband forcing and a more physical-type instability with a broadband forcing.

8.3.1. Narrowband forcing

The instability forcing is required to act at small scales and to generate the meridional drift or Rossby waves. For simplicity, an idealised narrowband forcing at a single mode, $\mathbf{k}$ at the scale of the ion gyroradius or deformation radius was chosen with $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} > 0$ and constant [142]. In order to introduce mode coupling and allow the development of turbulence with a single-mode forcing, the numerical simulations were started from an initial condition consisting of spatial white noise of very low amplitude.

Results presented in Fig. 29 are for $\gamma^+ = 1.2$ at $\mathbf{k}_i = (50, 0)$, $m = 8$, $\nu_m = 1.0 \times 10^{-29}$ and $F = 2500$ and $\beta = 1 \times 10^5$ which corresponds to $\chi = 3.75 \times 10^{-4}$. The $\mathbf{k}$ -space has been divided into the zonal sector for which $|k_x| < |k_y|$ and a meridional sector for which the opposite is true, minus the forcing mode. Fig. 29 shows the evolution of the energy contained in the forcing mode, zonal and meridional sectors. The energy of the forced mode noise grows exponentially while the initial energies of the zonal and meridional sectors remains constant at the level of the background noise. After $t = 10$, when the amplitude of the forcing mode reaches a high enough level to trigger nonlinear mode coupling, a sharp growth of the zonal and meridional energies takes place. A short time after however, the energies in the forcing mode and in the meridional sector are suddenly suppressed while that of the zonal energy remains at the highest level attained. A steady state is reached whereby the energy of the forcing mode is fully suppressed while that of the zonal energy subsequently saturates at a level which is much higher than the one of the meridional sector. The inset in Fig. 29 shows the saturated value of the ZF as a function of β in terms of $U_{rms}(\nabla U)_{rms} \sim U^2/L$ and the comparison with the theoretical predictions arising from Eq. (199) and Eq. (221) for the weak and strong turbulence cases respectively (dashed lines). We see that the saturated ZF level agrees well with the theoretical predictions for both the weak and the strong regimes.

The corresponding 2D energy spectrum is shown in Fig. 30. In panel (a), the wave amplitude of the forcing mode at $(50, 0)$ has reached a high enough level to become modulationally unstable [98, 100, 82]. This triggers the nonlinear interactions, initially with modes which lie on the resonant (blue, dotted) curve which grow from the background noise. The maximally unstable perturbations to the LHS of the resonant curve have a significant zonal component and are equivalent to those in Fig. 6. The observed rapid decrease in the meridional energy corresponds to the zonal flow-induced diffusion along the (red, solid) curves of constant Ω which is evident in Fig. 30 (b). While the diffusion is not *exactly* along the curves, the deviation could be attributed to the fact that the scale-separation between the forcing and zonal modes is not as pronounced as is assumed in the derivation of Eq. (192). Diffusion along the (green, dashed) curves of constant $Z_{\mathbf{k}}$ shows evidence of interactions with small-scale zonal flows and again highlights the importance of the zonostrophy invariant in drift and Rossby wave turbulence theory [28].

8.3.2. Broadband forcing

An expression for $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}$ which is more physically relevant can be obtained by considering the linear dynamics of a higher level model which does contain an intrinsic instability such as the HW model in the case of plasmas or the two-layer model in GFD. In this case, analysis of a mean zonal baroclinic flow in its simplest configuration as a two-layer quasi-geostrophic model [44] yields an expression for the baroclinic instability. Considering the two layers to be of equal height and sliding relative to each other with a horizontal slip velocity V , one gets the growth rate of the unstable baroclinic mode [24, 44]:

$$\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^+ = V k_x \sqrt{\frac{F - k^2}{F + k^2}}. \quad (223)$$

A derivation of this instability can be found in [44]. The expression in Eq. (223) is used in the numerical simulations and is shown graphically in Fig. 31. Points to note are that the growth rate ($\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^+ > 0$) is in a region adjacent to the k_x axis and it reaches a maximum on this axis. The $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^+ = 0$ contour line passes through $\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$ and $\mathbf{k} = (\sqrt{F}, 0)$.

Analogous to the baroclinic instability in GFD, is the ITG instability in plasmas, which is the most important instability for fusion turbulence. The centre of a magnetically confined plasma could reach a temperature of 10 – 20keV with colder edge temperatures of the order 1eV. This large thermodynamic gradient in a tokamak plasma is a perfect source of free energy for instabilities. It arises in magnetically confined plasmas due to the particles in the hotter side of the plasma having higher kinetic energy which eventually causes perturbations along the temperature gradient. The higher drift velocity of these particles across the magnetic field adds to the perturbations which then can become unstable. The typical expression for the ITG instability [147] is

$$\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^+ = \text{const} \frac{v_{ti}}{\sqrt{RL_T}}, \quad (224)$$

where v_{ti} is the ion thermal velocity, R is the tokamak major radius and $L_T = \frac{\nabla T}{T}$ and T is temperature. It can be derived from the electrostatic gyrokinetic equation [147].

Note that to compare the nonlinearity levels χ in the single mode forcing and the broadband forcing cases, one has to take into account that there are many more modes excited in the latter case (by the factor $\sim F$ in our case) and, therefore, there is much more energy pumped into the system. Roughly, at the same value of χ the nonlinearity level is $\sim F$ times greater in the broadband forcing case than in the single mode case.

For our simulations we have chosen the instability shape as in (223) with $V = 5 \times 10^{-4} - 1 \times 10^{-2}$ and $F = 7000$. For dissipation at high wavenumbers we chose the usual viscosity with $m = 2$, $\nu_m = 2.0 \times 10^{-9}$. The initial condition is Gaussian, centered at the maximum of the forcing mode. Fig. 32 shows the time evolution of the energy contained within each sector for various levels of nonlinearity where the forcing sector now encompasses the modes within the variance of the Gaussian distribution.

As before, the energy of the forcing sector grows exponentially at the beginning. The energies in the zonal and meridional sectors also grow from the outset because both of these sectors now contain some linearly unstable modes. The forcing energy continues to grow until the resonant nonlinear interactions occur and the forcing is subsequently suppressed. While there is no full saturation, the energy growth in the zonal and meridional sectors is greatly reduced with the zonal energy significantly dominating that of the meridional sector for the case $\chi = 9.62 \times 10^{-7}$ in Fig. 32 (a). On the other hand, as the level of nonlinearity is increased, the energy in the zonal sector becomes less dominant over the meridional one and the level of forcing suppression is also reduced as evident in Figs. 32 (b) and (c). Furthermore, the saturation is much more complete in the higher level models that intrinsically contain the correct instability mechanism; see description of the HW and EHW turbulence in the next section.

The initial resonant interactions in a weakly nonlinear case ($\chi = 2.5 \times 10^{-5}$) are again evident in the 2D energy spectrum plots in Fig. 33 (a). Subsequently in a later frame shown in Fig. 33 (b) the small scale spectrum begins to diffuse along the open curves of constant $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ and also diffusion along the shell-like curve of constant $Z_{\mathbf{k}}$ to large scales, showing the two unconnected components of the turbulence spectrum. Finally in Fig. 33 (c), the energy has been suppressed at the forcing modes and is now concentrated around the zonal modes. The corresponding vorticity plots in Fig. 34 show these zonal-type structures at late times.

The angle-averaged spectra in a weakly nonlinear case ($\chi = 2.5 \times 10^{-5}$) are shown in Fig. 36. We see a tendency to a k^{-5} law. The isotropic power law with this exponent was originally proposed by Rhines [120] who then dismissed it as being physically impossible. However, there are arguments, based on data from the Voyager spacecraft, that this spectrum exists for the zonal flows on Jupiter and Saturn [148], albeit for the zonal component of the wavenumber only. Of course, our system is strongly anisotropic and the angle-averaged spectra are of a limited value. However, the zonal component dominates in the angle-averaged spectrum at the late stages and, therefore, the -5 spectrum we observe appears to be consistent with the previous observations on Jupiter and Saturn.

For higher levels of the nonlinearity measure, as expected, the vorticity plots are characterised by vortices rather than zonal structures, evident in Fig. 35 for the case $\chi = 25$. The β term can be neglected so that we have the system equivalent of 2D Navier-Stokes turbulence forced by an instability. In this case, condensation occurs into strong round vortices with radial profiles of alternating vorticity sign rather than zonal flows, similar to the structures which have been identified in simulations of the Navier-Stokes-Kuramoto-Sivashinsky equation [149] which also contains an instability term. In the unforced system such alternating vorticity profiles would be highly unstable. Somewhat paradoxically, our added instability term $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}\psi_{\mathbf{k}}$ stabilises the round vortices with alternating vorticity and makes them grow exponentially without a visible sign of saturation.

A study with the idealised single-mode forcing in the EHM model reveals a qualitatively similar behaviour for the spectrum diffusion in k -space and for the suppression of the forcing mode. It does however, display somewhat better zonation properties in that the zonal sector saturates at a slightly higher level.

8.4. Feedback loop in HW & EHW models

The drift turbulence - ZF feedback loop in HW and EHW was first studied by [150]. ZF generation followed by suppression of the primary instability scales was demonstrated for EHW, but not for HW. They concluded that there is no ZF generation and feedback mechanism in HW and therefore, the extension of the model is crucial. However, this assertion is true only for relatively small coupling parameter values, $\alpha \lesssim 1$. Recently [151] computed the HW system exploring a wide range of α . They showed that for large α 's the HW system is perfectly capable of generating pronounced ZF's which suppress the primary instability and

saturate. For example, for α the HW system was shown to saturate with the zonal-to-meridional energy ratio of about 10. This result seems natural considering that for large α the HW system becomes identical to CHM. However, to observe the WT-ZF feedback mechanism in CHM one had to introduce an extra instability forcing term, whereas in the HW system such an instability is present naturally, even though it is weak in the large α case.

9. Conclusion

In this review we have summarised the ideas and findings of Rossby and drift wave turbulence together with zonal flows within the simplest PDE models which describes such systems, the Charney-Hasegawa-Mima (CHM) equation and its extensions – extended Hasegawa-Mima (EHM), forced-dissipated CHM and EHM, Hasegawa-Wakatani (HW) and extended Hasegawa-Wakatani (EHW) equations. Our focus has been on the most important processes and stages in the life cycle for such basic systems: generation of small-scale, predominantly meridional, waves by a primary instability, nonlinear interaction of the small-scale waves leading to generation of zonal flows, and feedback of the zonal flows on the small-scale waves. Understanding these processes in such basic nonlinear models helps gain a qualitative (and sometimes even quantitative) understanding of the real nonlinear phenomena in plasmas and geophysical fluids.

The first important stage in the nonlinear evolution of the Rossby and drift wave systems (after the initial generation of meridional waves) is the zonal flow (ZF) generation. There are two classical scenarios of this process, the modulational instability (MI) and the anisotropic inverse cascade. These two mechanisms are not completely unrelated – MI is expected when the primary meridional waves have a relatively narrow spectrum whereas a cascade is more likely for a broadband initial spectrum. In real, non-idealised situations, one should expect a mixture of the two.

We have reviewed the theory and the numerical simulation results of the MI of the Rossby and drift waves. We have described the linear theory based on the four-mode truncation (4MT) and emphasised the role of the non-dimensional carrier wave amplitude M (effective Rossby number), the role of the deformation radius ρ and the role of resonant wave interactions in the weakly nonlinear case. We described a bifurcation of the most unstable modulation from zonal to off-zonal when M falls below a critical value: 0.53 for CHM with $\rho = \infty$ and a lower (ρ -dependent) value for EHM. This effect has its signature in the late nonlinear evolution stage too where numerically we observe generation of off-zonal random jets in the $M = 0.1$ case, and it is likely to play a role in the formation of slightly off-zonal jets in both GFD and plasmas.

The initial nonlinear evolution of the MI for large M leads to a rolling-up of the carrier wave vorticity into vortex streets. Such hydrodynamic vortices behave very differently from waves and it is precisely at the moment of roll-up that the full system's evolution strongly departs from the prediction of the 4MT. After the roll-up the full system enters into a saturated quasi-stable state which persists for a relatively long time but eventually decays due to the presence of hyper-viscosity. For the zonal velocity component, we observe the formation of stable, narrow jets. These jets are more stable than one would expect based on the Rayleigh-Kuo criterion because their 2D structure consists of stable vortex streets. Such narrow jets represent very effective transport barriers in both plasmas and GFD. If M is small and the roll-up does not occur (or is delayed), the full system may follow its 4MT counterpart for much longer whereby the initial modulation growth reverses and may exhibit the nonlinear oscillations as in the 4MT. The EHM model differs from the CHM only for finite ρ and only for the purely zonal modulations. In general, ZFs form easier in EHM than in CHM.

We have also reviewed the cascade scenario of the ZF generation within the wave turbulence (WT) approach. We have briefly reviewed the general WT theory and its application to Rossby and drift waves. We have discussed Kolmogorov-Zakharov scaling solutions and established their non-realizability due to their nonlocality and instability. We have described additional quadratic invariants, in particular the zonostrophy invariant, the existence of which makes the energy cascade strongly anisotropic and directed towards the zonal scales via the triple cascade behaviour. We have described a WT theory based on the hypothesis of nonlocality of interactions with ZFs.

The second important stage in the nonlinear evolution of the Rossby and drift wave systems is the feedback of the ZFs onto the small-scale WT leading to suppression of the energy input to the system (via the primary instability) via the suppression of the motions at the instability scales. This process closes the evolution loop in the Rossby and drift turbulence life cycle. The feedback loop has been described based on the nonlocal WT theory of drift and Rossby waves and has been theoretically investigated and numerically validated. This is one candidate for the explanation of the LH transition in tokamaks, as previously mentioned. The instability, modelled here as an extra forcing term in the CHM equation at the scale of the ion Larmor or deformation radius, generates the (predominantly meridional) small-scale drift or Rossby waves, whose energy initially grows exponentially. The nonlinear evolution of the energy spectrum progresses as diffusion along 1D curves in $\mathbf{k}$ -space, increasing the diffusion coefficient as it does so, resulting in faster diffusion to the large scales. The increasing diffusion battles with the growth of the instability until a balance is reached whereby the instability is effectively suppressed and the large scale zonal flow saturates at a level of the order defined by Eq. (199). We have also extended the analysis on a qualitative level beyond the weak WT approach and derived another saturation estimate, Eq. (221), which is valid for strong WT produced in the cases when the instability is strong.

Using an idealised narrowband instability forcing, we have presented a numerical validation of the theoretical predictions for the instability suppression and the ZF saturation both in the case of the weak and the strong forcings given by Eqs (199) and (221) respectively. The idealised forcing produces well the saturation mechanism. In numerical simulations with a broadband instability forcing, which mimics the baroclinic or ITG instability, qualitatively similar behaviour is observed as with the case of the narrow-band forcing in the weak instability case. Namely, the instability is suppressed by the emerging ZFs and the latter show a tendency towards saturation. However, for strong instabilities the ZFs become unstable and fail to suppress the primary instability and an unbounded growth of the small-scale turbulence is observed. This behaviour is a prototype of a well-discussed phenomena in the nuclear fusion community, the Dimits shift – a numerically observed effect of the instability threshold being higher in terms of the temperature gradient than that predicted by the linear ITG theory [152]. Indeed, our results suggest that in a certain range above the linear instability threshold the emerging ZFs act to suppress the instability growth, whereas for strong enough instability (strong temperature gradient) the ZFs are not able to suppress the growth at the small scales.

We have also discussed the results for the drift wave and ZF feedback loop in the extended models, EHM, HW and EHW, and have shown that the qualitative picture in these models remains similar to the basic forced-dissipated CHM model.

Thus we see that the CHM and its extensions, being the most basic PDE models, are capable of capturing, at least at a qualitative level, the most nontrivial and profound effects observed in the real Rossby and drift wave systems. Which of these results could be of use on a quantitative level for real tokamak experiments depends on whether the weak or strong turbulence regime is realised. The strong turbulence scaling in Eq. (221), appropriate for $U \gtrsim \frac{\beta}{F}$ has been widely used in tokamak theory [153] for some time now (usually without the finite gyroradius correction present in Eq. (221)). On the other hand, the weak turbulence estimate in Eq. (199) is more recent [4] and should be used when $U \lesssim \frac{\beta}{F}$. Zonal flows in the DIIIID and JET tokamaks have been reported with $U \sim 5 - 35 \text{ km sec}^{-1}$ [154, 155], whereas $\frac{\beta}{F}$ for both systems could range from 5 km sec^{-1} in the core to 100 km sec^{-1} in the pedestal regions. Thus, both the weak and the strong turbulent regimes should be realistically realisable.

Acknowledgments

This research was supported in part by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. NSF PHY11-25915. CC is grateful for the hospitality of the Okinawa Institute of Science and Technology Graduate University and the Kavli Institute for Theoretical Physics during the preparation of this manuscript. Part of the manuscript preparation time SN spent at the SPEC laboratory at CEA Saclay in France being supported by the grant Chaire du Labex PALM, which is gratefully acknowledged.

A. Nonlocal interaction with zonal flows

In this appendix we explain the details of the reduction of the kinetic equation to a diffusion equation in $\mathbf{k}$ -space in the case of nonlocal turbulence and derive the curves along which spectral transport of small-scale turbulence occurs due to nonlocal interactions. The starting point for the analysis is the Doppler-shifted kinetic equation, Eq. (191), in the frame moving with the drift velocity. The Doppler-shifted frequency is

$$\Omega_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{\beta}{F} k_x + \omega_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{\beta}{F} \frac{k_x k^2}{k^2 + F}. \quad (\text{A.1})$$

The resonant manifolds are not altered by this shift due to the presence of the wavevector delta function. If we consider small-scale turbulence having typical wavevector $\mathbf{k}$, the corresponding resonant manifold intersects the $k_{1x} = 0$ axis at two points:

$$P_1 = (0, 0), \quad (\text{A.2})$$

$$P_2 = (0, -2k_y). \quad (\text{A.3})$$

The point P_1 corresponds to an interaction with a large-scale zonal flow (ZF). The second corresponds to interaction with a relatively small-scale ZF. In the latter case, "small-scale" is not meant in any asymptotic sense since the wavenumber of the ZF is only a factor of two different from the wavenumber of the small-scale turbulence (but it obviously has a much smaller zonal component of the wavenumber). The ZF described by the point P_2 is certainly small-scale with respect to that described by the point P_1 although it may only be moderately small-scale with respect to the wavenumber $\mathbf{k}$, of the small-scale turbulence itself. Nonlocal interaction with the vicinity of each of the points P_1 and P_2 produce spectral transport which is diffusive in $\mathbf{k}$ -space although the details differ considerably. We will now consider each case in turn beginning with the large-scale ZF and then moving on to the small-scale case.

A.1. Nonlocal interaction with large-scale zonal flows

Let us introduce a large-scale reference wavenumber, K , such that $K \ll k$ and $K \ll \sqrt{F}$. We can split the right hand side of Eq. (191) as

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = \int_{k_1 < K} \text{Coll}[n_{\mathbf{k}}, n_{\mathbf{k}}, \mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1] d\mathbf{k}_1 + \int_{k_1 \geq K} \text{Coll}[n_{\mathbf{k}}, n_{\mathbf{k}_1}, \mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1] d\mathbf{k}_1, \quad (\text{A.4})$$

where the collision integral is as written in Eq. (191). If the interaction is nonlocal then contributions to the collision integral for $n_{\mathbf{k}}$ come mainly from scales in the neighbourhood of the point P_1 . Therefore we neglect the second term compared with the first. The collision integral can be further simplified since we assume that the amplitude of the small-scale turbulence, $n_{\mathbf{k}}$, is small compared to the amplitude of the large scales, $n_{\mathbf{k}_1}$. Since $k_1 \ll k$, $n_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}$ is also small compared to $n_{\mathbf{k}_1}$. Therefore we can neglect the term $n_{\mathbf{k}}n_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}$. Furthermore, $\text{sign}(\omega_{\mathbf{k}}\omega_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}) = 1$ as $\mathbf{k}_1 \rightarrow 0$. The term in the square brackets of Eq. (191) then becomes

$$(n_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1} - n_{\mathbf{k}})n_{\mathbf{k}_1}.$$

Let us denote the simplified integrand by

$$F(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1) = 4\pi \left| V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}} \right|^2 \delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}} - \Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1} - \Omega_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1})(n_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1} - n_{\mathbf{k}})n_{\mathbf{k}_1}, \quad (\text{A.5})$$

Using the symmetries of $V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}}$ and $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}}$, it can be shown that

$$F(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1) = -F(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1, -\mathbf{k}_1). \quad (\text{A.6})$$

Eq. (191) can then be written as

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{k_1 < K} F(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1) d\mathbf{k}_1 - \frac{1}{2} \int_{k_1 < K} F(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1, -\mathbf{k}_1) d\mathbf{k}_1 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{k_1 < K} F(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1) d\mathbf{k}_1 - F(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_1) d\mathbf{k}_1. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.7})$$

Since k_1 is small, we can Taylor expand $F(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_1)$ with respect to $\mathbf{k}_1$ in the first argument:

$$F(\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_1) = F(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1) + \mathbf{k}_1 \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} F(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1) + O(k_1^2), \quad (\text{A.8})$$

where $\nabla_{\mathbf{k}} = (\partial_{k_x}, \partial_{k_y})$ is the gradient operator in $\mathbf{k}$ -space. Substituting back into Eq. A.7 and neglecting second-order terms gives

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = -\frac{1}{2} \int_{\mathbf{k}_1 < \mathbf{k}} \mathbf{k}_1 \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} F(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1). \quad (\text{A.9})$$

We now Taylor expand $F(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1)$ with respect to $\mathbf{k}_1$. To do so, we first Taylor expand the argument of the δ -function. Taylor expanding $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}$ with respect to $\mathbf{k}_1$ gives:

$$\Omega_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1} = \Omega_{\mathbf{k}} - \mathbf{k}_1 \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \Omega_{\mathbf{k}} + O(k_1^2)$$

as $\mathbf{k}_1 \rightarrow 0$. Thus the difference $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}} - \Omega_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}$ behaves as $\mathbf{k}_1 \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ as $\mathbf{k}_1 \rightarrow 0$. On the other hand, the remaining term $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}_1}$ behaves as k_1^2 as $\mathbf{k}_1 \rightarrow 0$ as can be seen directly from Eq. (A.1). Thus the latter can be neglected compared with the former in the limit $\mathbf{k}_1 \rightarrow 0$ and we can replace

$$\begin{aligned} \delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}} - \Omega_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}) &= \delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}} - (\Omega_{\mathbf{k}} - \mathbf{k}_1 \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \Omega_{\mathbf{k}} + O(k_1^2))) \\ &\approx \delta(\mathbf{k}_1 \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}). \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.10})$$

Performing a similar expansion for the $n_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}$ term gives

$$F(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1) \approx 4\pi \left| V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}} \right|^2 \delta(\mathbf{k}_1 \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}) \mathbf{k}_1 \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} n_{\mathbf{k}}, \quad (\text{A.11})$$

and substituting Eq. (A.11) back into Eq. (A.9), the kinetic equation for the small scales can then be written as an anisotropic diffusion equation in $\mathbf{k}$ -space:

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial k_i} D_{ij}(k_x, k_y) \frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_j} \quad (\text{A.12})$$

with the components of the diffusion tensor given by

$$D_{ij}(k_x, k_y) = 2\pi \int_{k_1 < K} \left| V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}} \right|^2 \delta(\mathbf{k}_1 \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}} \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}) k_{1i} k_{1j} n_{\mathbf{k}_1} d\mathbf{k}_1. \quad (\text{A.13})$$

If we assume that the large-scale turbulence is principally supported at scales $k_1 \ll K$, then the reference wavenumber, K , can be extended to infinity in Eq. A.13. The components of the diffusion tensor are then

$$\begin{aligned} D_{ij}(k_x, k_y) &= 2\pi \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}}|^2 \delta \left(k_{1x} \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} + k_{1y} \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right) k_{1i} k_{1j} n_{\mathbf{k}_1} d\mathbf{k}_1 \\ &= 2\pi \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}}|^2 \left| \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} \right|^{-1} \delta(k_{1x} + k_{1y} \sigma_{\mathbf{k}}) k_{1i} k_{1j} n_{\mathbf{k}_1} d\mathbf{k}_1 \\ &= 2\pi \left| \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} \right|^{-1} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[|V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}}|^2 \begin{pmatrix} k_{1x}^2 & k_{1x} k_{1y} \\ k_{1x} k_{1y} & k_{1y}^2 \end{pmatrix} \delta(k_{1x} + k_{1y} \sigma_{\mathbf{k}}) n_{\mathbf{k}_1} \right] dk_{1x} dk_{1y} \end{aligned}$$

where we have introduced the parameter $\sigma_{\mathbf{k}}$ for brevity, defined as,

$$\sigma_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} / \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} = \frac{2F k_x k_y}{k^4 + F(3k_x^2 + k_y^2)}. \quad (\text{A.14})$$

We can now perform the integration with respect to k_{1x} to obtain the final expression for the diffusion tensor:

$$D(\mathbf{k}) = \mathcal{D}_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_{1x}} \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_{\mathbf{k}}^2 & -\sigma_{\mathbf{k}} \\ -\sigma_{\mathbf{k}} & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{A.15})$$

where the scalar function, $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{k})$, contains all the integrations over the large-scale ZF:

$$\mathcal{D}_{\mathbf{k}} = 2\pi \left| \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} \right|^{-2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[|V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1}^{\mathbf{k}}|^2 n_{\mathbf{k}_1} \right]_{k_{1x} = -\sigma_{\mathbf{k}} k_{1y}} k_{1y}^2 dk_{1y}.$$

A crucial point is that the matrix in Eq. A.15 is singular. The eigenvalues are 0 and $1 + \sigma_{\mathbf{k}}^2$ with corresponding eigenvectors $(\frac{1}{\sigma_{\mathbf{k}}}, 1)$ and $(-\sigma_{\mathbf{k}}, 1)$. This suggests that diffusion is along one-dimensional curves, i.e. in the $(-\sigma_{\mathbf{k}}, 1)$ direction. We now aim to find a change of coordinates which will make the one-dimensional nature of the diffusion explicit so that we can identify the curves along which diffusive transport occurs. The general structure of Eq. A.12 is

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial k_x}, \frac{\partial}{\partial k_y} \right) \Lambda(k_x, k_y) \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial}{\partial k_x} \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial k_y} \end{pmatrix} n(k_x, k_y). \quad (\text{A.16})$$

Under a general change of coordinates,

$$F : (k_x, k_y) \mapsto (\kappa_1(k_x, k_y), \kappa_2(k_x, k_y)), \quad (\text{A.17})$$

this equation transforms to [156]

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = |\det J| \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial \kappa_1}, \frac{\partial}{\partial \kappa_2} \right) |\det J|^{-1} J D(\mathbf{k}) J^T \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial}{\partial \kappa_1} \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial \kappa_2} \end{pmatrix} n_{\mathbf{k}}, \quad (\text{A.18})$$

where J is the Jacobian matrix for the change of variables,

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial \kappa_1}{\partial k_x} & \frac{\partial \kappa_1}{\partial k_y} \\ \frac{\partial \kappa_2}{\partial k_x} & \frac{\partial \kappa_2}{\partial k_y} \end{pmatrix}. \quad (\text{A.19})$$

and our notation tacitly assumes that in Eq. (A.18) we have used the inverse of the coordinate transformation, Eq. (A.17), to express all $\mathbf{k}$ -dependence of $n_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $D(\mathbf{k})$ in terms of κ_1 and κ_2 . The task is to find the correct change of variables, F , so that Eq. (A.18) becomes a one-dimensional diffusion. If we denote the Jacobian of F schematically by

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$$

then we seek a transformation which satisfies

$$J \Lambda J^T = \begin{pmatrix} (b - a\sigma_{\mathbf{k}})^2 & (b - a\sigma_{\mathbf{k}})(d - c\sigma_{\mathbf{k}}) \\ (b - a\sigma_{\mathbf{k}})(d - c\sigma_{\mathbf{k}}) & (d - c\sigma_{\mathbf{k}})^2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

This is true if $b - a\sigma_{\mathbf{k}} = 1$ and $d - c\sigma_{\mathbf{k}} = 0$. The new coordinates must therefore satisfy the equations

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \kappa_1}{\partial k_y} - \sigma_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{\partial \kappa_1}{\partial k_x} &= 1 \\ \frac{\partial \kappa_2}{\partial k_y} - \sigma_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{\partial \kappa_2}{\partial k_x} &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Keeping in mind Eq. (A.14), the solution of these equations is

$$\begin{aligned}\kappa_1(k_x, k_y) &= k_y \\ \kappa_2(k_x, k_y) &= \Omega(k_x, k_y).\end{aligned}\quad (\text{A.20})$$

The Jacobian matrix is

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} & \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad |\det J| = \left| \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} \right|.$$

In the new coordinates, the diffusion Eq. (A.12) is now one-dimensional

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} \frac{\partial}{\partial \kappa_1} \left(D(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial \kappa_1} \right). \quad (\text{A.21})$$

In the (κ_1, κ_2) plane Eq. (A.21) describes one-dimensional diffusion in the κ_1 direction with κ_2 being constant. Translating this back into the original $\mathbf{k}$ -plane, we have

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} \frac{\partial}{\partial k_y} \left(D(\mathbf{k}) \left(\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right)_{\Omega} \right), \quad (\text{A.22})$$

where $\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial k_y} \right)_{\Omega}$ means differentiation with respect to k_y with $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ being held constant, and the diffusion coefficient is defined by Eq. (193). Illustrative examples of the curves $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}} = \text{constant}$ are plotted in Fig. 27(a).

A.2. Nonlocal interaction with small-scale zonal flows

We now outline the analogous calculation assuming that the evolution is dominated by interaction with the point $P_2 = (0, 2k_y)$ corresponding to small-scale ZFs. These results were first presented in [28].

Following the same reasoning as before, we introduce a reference scale, K , satisfying $K \ll k$ and $K \ll 1/\rho$, and neglect the contributions to the collision integral coming from outside of a ball of radius K of the point $\mathbf{p} = (0, 2k_y)$. We thus approximate Eq. (191) by

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} &= \int_{|\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k}_1| < K} d\mathbf{k}_1 F(\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}_1) \\ &= - \int_{|\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k}_1| < K} d\mathbf{k}_1 F(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1, -\mathbf{k}_1).\end{aligned}\quad (\text{A.23})$$

Taylor expanding the first argument about $\mathbf{k}_1 = \mathbf{p}$ gives

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} &= - \int_{|\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k}_1| < K} d\mathbf{k}_1 \left[F(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{p}, -\mathbf{k}_1) + (\mathbf{k}_1 - \mathbf{p}) \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}_1} F(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1, \mathbf{k}_1) \Big|_{\mathbf{k}_1=\mathbf{p}} + O(|\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_1|^2) \right] \\ &\approx - \int_{|\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k}_1| < K} d\mathbf{k}_1 \left[F(\mathbf{k}^*, -\mathbf{k}_1) - (k_{1x}, k_{1y} - 2k_y) \cdot (\partial_{k_x} F(\mathbf{k}^*, -\mathbf{k}_1), \partial_{k_y} F(\mathbf{k}^*, -\mathbf{k}_1)) \right].\end{aligned}\quad (\text{A.24})$$

Here for brevity we used the shorthand notation

$$\mathbf{k}^* = \mathbf{k} - \mathbf{p} = (k_x, -k_y). \quad (\text{A.25})$$

We now expand $F(\mathbf{k}^*, -\mathbf{k}_1)$ about $\mathbf{k}_1 = \mathbf{p}$. Since $V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}}$ and $n_{\mathbf{k}_1}$ both vary rapidly near $\mathbf{k}_1 = \mathbf{p}$, we should only expand the $n_{\mathbf{k}^* + \mathbf{k}_1} - n_{\mathbf{k}^*}$ and $\delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}^*} - \Omega_{-\mathbf{k}_1} - \Omega_{\mathbf{k}^* + \mathbf{k}_1})$ terms. Let us look at these two terms in turn.

$$\begin{aligned}n_{\mathbf{k}^* + \mathbf{k}_1} - n_{\mathbf{k}^*} &= n_{\mathbf{k}^* + \mathbf{p}} - n_{\mathbf{k}^*} + (\mathbf{k}_1 - \mathbf{p}) \cdot \nabla_{\mathbf{k}_1} n(\mathbf{k}^* + \mathbf{k}_1) \Big|_{\mathbf{k}_1=\mathbf{p}} + O(|\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_1|^2) \\ &\approx n_{\mathbf{k}} - n_{\mathbf{k}^*} + (k_{1x}, k_{1y} - 2k_y) \cdot (\partial_{k_x} n_{\mathbf{k}}, \partial_{k_y} n_{\mathbf{k}}).\end{aligned}\quad (\text{A.26})$$

Unlike the expansion of the collision integral about the point $(0, 0)$ in Sec. A.1 above, the leading order term in the Taylor expansion of $F(\mathbf{k}^*, -\mathbf{k}_1)$ about $\mathbf{k}_1 = \mathbf{p}$ is not necessarily zero. It vanishes only if the spectrum is symmetric about the k_x axis (ie $n(k_x, k_y) = n(k_x, -k_y)$). We shall return to this point below. Next, let us look at the argument of the δ -function near $\mathbf{k}_1 = \mathbf{p}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\Omega_{\mathbf{k}^*} - \Omega_{-\mathbf{k}_1} - \Omega_{\mathbf{k}^* + \mathbf{k}_1} &= \Omega_{\mathbf{k}^*} - \Omega_{-\mathbf{p}} - \Omega_{\mathbf{k}} - k_{1x} \left[\frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial q'_1}(-q'_1, -q'_2) + \frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial q'_1}(k_x + q'_1, -k_y + q'_2) \right]_{(q'_1, q'_2)=(0, 2k_y)} \\ &\quad - (k_{1y} - 2k_y) \left[\frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial q'_2}(-q'_1, -q'_2) + \frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial q'_2}(k_x + q'_1, -k_y + q'_2) \right]_{(q'_1, q'_2)=(0, 2k_y)} + O(|\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_1|^2) \\ &\approx - \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} (k_{1y} - 2k_y + \xi_{\mathbf{k}} k_{1x}),\end{aligned}\quad (\text{A.27})$$

where

$$\xi_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{3F(k_x^2 - k_y^2) + k_x^4 + 6k_x^2k_y^2 - 3k_y^4}{2k_xk_y(F + 4k_y^2)}. \quad (\text{A.28})$$

The various derivatives have been computed from Eq. (A.1). For example:

$$\left[\frac{\partial \Omega}{\partial q_2'}(k_x + q_1', -k_y + q_2') \right]_{(q_1', q_2')=(0, 2k_y)} = \frac{2\beta k_x k_y}{(k^2 + F)^2} = \frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y},$$

and so forth. The leading order term is zero since $\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{k}^*$ are resonant. Putting this together, the Taylor expansion of the δ -function is

$$\delta(\Omega_{\mathbf{k}^*} - \Omega_{-\mathbf{k}_1} - \Omega_{\mathbf{k}^* + \mathbf{k}_1}) \approx \left[\frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right]^{-1} \delta(k_{1y} - 2k_y + \xi_{\mathbf{k}} k_{1x}). \quad (\text{A.29})$$

From Eqs (A.24), (A.26) and (A.29) we see that the leading order term in the kinetic equation coming from nonlocal interaction with small-scale ZFs is:

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = Y_{\mathbf{k}} [n(k_x, -k_y) - n(k_x, k_y)], \quad (\text{A.30})$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} Y_{\mathbf{k}} &= 4\pi \left[\frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right]^{-1} \int_{|\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k}_1| < K} dk_{1x} dk_{1y} |V_{-\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k} \mathbf{k}_1}|^2 \delta(k_{1y} - 2k_y + \xi_{\mathbf{k}} k_{1x}) n(k_{1x}, k_{1y}) \\ &= 4\pi \left[\frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right]^{-1} \int_{|k_{1x}| < K} \left[|V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k} \mathbf{k}_1}|^2 n_{\mathbf{k}_1} \right]_{k_{1y}=2k_y} dk_{1x}. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.31})$$

We have used the symmetries, Eqs (64) and (65), of $V_{\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k}}$ and relabelled the integration variable $q_1 \rightarrow -q_1$ to bring the interaction coefficient to a neater form. At the final step the delta function has been used to integrate out q_2 to leading order. Eq. (A.30) tells us that the leading order effect of interactions with small-scale ZFs is to cause the spectrum to relax to a state which is symmetric about the k_x -axis, a point which was first made in [15, 16].

If we wish to observe any redistribution of spectral energy density due to the interactions with small-scale ZFs, we need to consider the higher order terms in Eq. (A.24). The first order term vanishes after integration over $\mathbf{k}_1$ since the integrand is an odd function of $\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_1$. The next contribution is therefore the second order one. From Eqs (A.24) and (A.26) the second order contribution can again be presented as an anisotropic diffusion equation in $\mathbf{k}$ -space:

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial}{\partial k_i} \left(B_{ij}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_j} \right) \quad (\text{A.32})$$

where the diffusion tensor is given by the matrix

$$\begin{aligned} B(\mathbf{k}) &= 4\pi \left[\frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right]^{-1} \int_{|\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k}_1| < K} dk_{1x} dk_{1y} |V_{-\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k} \mathbf{k}_1}|^2 \delta(k_{1y} - 2k_y + \xi_{\mathbf{k}} k_{1x}) n(k_{1x}, k_{1y}) \begin{pmatrix} k_{1x}^2 & k_{1x}(k_{1y} - 2k_y) \\ k_{1x}(k_{1y} - 2k_y) & (k_{1y} - 2k_y)^2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \left[\frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right]^{-1} \mathcal{B}(\mathbf{k}) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -\xi_{\mathbf{k}} \\ -\xi_{\mathbf{k}} & \xi_{\mathbf{k}}^2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.33})$$

where we have performed the same manipulations as those used to arrive at Eq. (A.31) above and, in common with $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{k})$ in Eq. (A.15), defined the scalar quantity

$$\mathcal{B}(\mathbf{k}) = 4\pi \int_{|k_{1x}| < K} \left[|V_{\mathbf{k}_1 \mathbf{k} \mathbf{k}_1}|^2 n(-k_{1x}, k_{1y}) k_{1x}^2 \right]_{k_{1y}=2k_y} dk_{1x}. \quad (\text{A.34})$$

The diffusion tensor, $B(\mathbf{k})$, is again singular indicating that Eq. (A.32) should be reducible to a one-dimensional diffusion equation by an appropriate change of variables. Following the same procedure as in Sec. A.1, the change of coordinates (A.17) will bring this equation to one-dimensional form provided that the new coordinates, (κ_1, κ_2) , satisfy the equations

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial \kappa_1}{\partial k_x} - \xi_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{\partial \kappa_1}{\partial k_y} &= 1 \\ \frac{\partial \kappa_2}{\partial k_x} - \xi_{\mathbf{k}} \frac{\partial \kappa_2}{\partial k_y} &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

The first equation can be easily solved by inspection while the second requires a little more effort (using the method of characteristics). The result is

$$\kappa_1(\mathbf{k}) = k_x \quad (\text{A.35})$$

$$\begin{aligned} \kappa_2(\mathbf{k}) = Z_{\mathbf{k}} &= \arctan\left(\frac{(k_y + \sqrt{3}k_x)\sqrt{F}}{k^2}\right) - \arctan\left(\frac{(k_y - \sqrt{3}k_x)\sqrt{F}}{k^2}\right) \\ &\quad - \frac{2\sqrt{3}Fk_x}{k^2 + F}. \end{aligned} \quad (\text{A.36})$$

(Note that the first line of this is *exactly* the zonostrophy invariant density, Eq. (163).) With this done, $\det J = \frac{\partial Z_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y}$, so that, according to Eq. (A.18), the diffusion equation, Eq. (A.32), transforms into

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial Z_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \frac{\partial}{\partial \kappa_1} \left[\left(\frac{\partial Z_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right)^{-1} \left(\frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right)^{-1} \tilde{B}(\mathbf{k}) \frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial \kappa_1} \right], \quad (\text{A.37})$$

where $\tilde{B}(\mathbf{k})$ is given by Eq. (A.34). In the (κ_1, κ_2) plane Eq. (A.37) describes one-dimensional diffusion in the κ_1 direction with κ_2 constant.

Similarly to what we have done before in Eq. (A.22), we translate Eq. (A.37) back into the (k_x, k_y) -plane making explicit the process of diffusion along lines of constant $Z_{\mathbf{k}}$:

$$\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial t} = \frac{\partial Z_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \frac{\partial}{\partial k_x} \left[\left(\frac{\partial Z_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right)^{-1} \left(\frac{\partial \Omega_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_y} \right)^{-1} \tilde{B}(\mathbf{k}) \left(\frac{\partial n_{\mathbf{k}}}{\partial k_x} \right)_Z \right], \quad (\text{A.38})$$

where $\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial k_x} \right)_Z$ means differentiation with respect to k_x with $Z_{\mathbf{k}}$ being held constant. Illustrative examples of the curves $Z_{\mathbf{k}} = \text{constant}$ are plotted in Fig. 27(b).

References

- [1] U. Frisch, *Turbulence: The legacy of A. N. Kolmogorov*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1995.
- [2] R. H. Kraichnan, Inertial ranges in two-dimensional turbulence, *Phys. Fluids* 10 (1967) 1417–1423.
- [3] V. S. Zakharov, V. S. Lvov, G. Falkovich, *Kolmogorov Spectra of Turbulence*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1992.
- [4] S. Nazarenko, *Wave Turbulence (Lecture notes in Physics)*, Springer, 2011.
- [5] A. A. Simon, The structure and temporal stability of Jupiter's zonal winds: A study of the north tropical region, *Icarus* 141 (1999) 29.
- [6] A. Sanchez-Lavega, J. F. Rojas, P. V. Sada, Saturn's zonal winds at cloud level, *Icarus* 147 (2000) 405–420.
- [7] B. Galperin, H. Nakano, H.-P. Huang, S. Sukoriansky, The ubiquitous zonal jets in the atmospheres of giant planets and earth's oceans, *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 131 (2004) L13303.
- [8] B. Galperin, R. M. B. Young, S. Sukoriansky, N. Dikovskaya, P. L. Read, A. J. Lancaster, D. Armstrong, Cassini observations reveal a regime of zonostrophic macroturbulence on jupiter, *Icarus* 229 (2014) 295–320.
- [9] J. M. Lewis, Clarifying the dynamics of the general circulation: Phillips's 1956 experiment, *Bull. Amer. Met. Soc.* 79 (1).
- [10] N. A. Maximenko, O. V. Melnichenko, P. P. Niiler, H. Sasaki, Stationary mesoscale jet-like features in the ocean, *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 35 (2008) L08603.
- [11] C. G. Rossby, Relation between variations in the intensity of the zonal circulation of the atmosphere and the displacements of the semi-permanent centres of action, *J. Marine Res.* 2 (1939) 38–55.
- [12] C. G. Rossby, Planetary flow patterns in the atmosphere, *Quart. J. Roy. Meteor. Soc. (suppl)* 66 (1940) 68–87.
- [13] L. I. Rudakov, R. Z. Sagdeev, On the instability of a nonuniform rarefied plasma in a strong magnetic field, *Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR* 138 (1961) 581.
- [14] P. H. Diamond, S.-I. Itoh, K. Itoh, T. S. Hahm, Zonal flows in plasma - a review, *Plasma Phys. Control. Fusion* 47 (5) (2005) R35–R161.
- [15] A. M. Balk, S. V. Nazarenko, V. E. Zakharov, On the nonlocal turbulence of drift type waves, *Phys. Lett. A* 146 (1990) 217–221.
- [16] A. M. Balk, V. E. Zakharov, S. V. Nazarenko, Nonlocal turbulence of drift waves, *Sov. Phys. JETP* 71 (1990) 249–260.
- [17] M. G. Shats, H. Xia, H. Punzmann, Spectral condensation of turbulence in plasmas and fluids and its role in low-to-high phase transitions in toroidal plasma, *Phys. Rev. E* 71 (2005) 046409.
- [18] O. G. Onishchenko, O. A. Pokhotelov, N. M. Astafieva, Generation of large-scale eddies and zonal winds in planetary atmospheres, *Physics-Uspekhi* 51 (2008) 577–589.
- [19] J. D. Lawson, Some criteria for a power producing thermonuclear reactor, *Proc. Phys. Soc. B* 70 (1957) 6–10.
- [20] R. Dendy (Ed.), *Plasma Physics, An Introductory course*, Cambridge University Press, 1993.
- [21] F. Wagner, G. Becker, K. Behringer, D. Campbell, A. Eberhagen, W. Engelhardt, G. Fussmann, O. Gehre, J. Gernhardt, G. v. Gierke, G. Haas, M. Huang, F. Karger, M. Keilhacker, O. Klüber, M. Kornherr, K. Lackner, G. Lisitano, G. G. Lister, H. M. Mayer, D. Meisel, E. R. Müller, H. Murmann, H. Niedermeyer, W. Poschenrieder, H. Rapp, H. Röhr, Regime of improved confinement and high beta in neutral-beam-heated divertor discharges of the ASDEX tokamak, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 49 (19) (1982) 1408–1412.
- [22] G. Manfredi, C. M. Roach, R. O. Dendy, Zonal flow and streamer generation in drift turbulence, *Plasma Phys. Control. Fusion* 43 (2001) 825–837.

- [23] M. E. McIntyre, Potential vorticity inversion and the wave-turbulence jigsaw: some recent clarifications, *Adv. Geosci.* 15 (2008) 47–56.
- [24] I. N. James, Suppression of baroclinic instability in horizontally sheared flows, *J. Atmo. Sci.* 44 (24) (1987) 3710.
- [25] D. L. Hartmann, K. R. Chan, B. L. Gary, M. R. Schoeberl, P. A. Newman, R. L. Martin, M. Loewenstein, J. R. Podolske, S. E. Strahan, Potential vorticity and mixing in the south polar vortex during spring, *J. Geophys. Res.* 94 (D9) (1989) 11625–11640.
- [26] P. W. Terry, Suppression of turbulence and transport by sheared flow, *Rev. Mod. Phys.* 72 (2000) 109–165.
- [27] C. Treppe, M. Hitchman, Tropical stratospheric circulation deduced from satellite aerosol data, *Nature* 355 (1992) 626–628.
- [28] S. V. Nazarenko, On the nonlocal interaction with zonal flows in turbulence of drift and Rossby waves, *Sov. Phys. JETP* 71 (1991) 604–607.
- [29] A. I. Smolyakov, P. H. Diamond, M. Malkov, Coherent structure phenomena in drift wave - zonal flow turbulence, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 84 (2000) 491–494.
- [30] A. Newell, S. Nazarenko, L. Biven, Wave turbulence and intermittency, *Physica D* 152–153 (2001) 520–550.
- [31] A. C. Newell, B. Rumpf, Wave turbulence, *Ann. Rev. Fluid Mech.* 43 (2011) 59–78.
- [32] F. Bouchet, A. Venaille, Statistical mechanics of two-dimensional and geophysical flows, *Phys. Reports* 515 (5) (2012) 227–295.
- [33] D. G. Dritschel, M. E. McIntyre, Multiple jets as PV staircases: the Phillips effect and the resilience of eddy- transport barriers, *J. Atmos. Sci.* 65 (2008) 855–874.
- [34] R. Fjørtoft, On the changes in the spectral distribution of kinetic energy for two-dimensional non-divergent flow, *Tellus* 5 (1953) 225–230.
- [35] K. Harper, M. D. Bustamante, S. V. Nazarenko, Quadratic invariants for discrete clusters of weakly interacting waves, *J. Phys. A: Math. Theor.* 46 (2013) 245501.
- [36] A. Hasegawa, C. G. MacLennan, Nonlinear behavior and turbulence spectra of drift waves and Rossby waves, *Phys. Fluids* 22 (1979) 2122–2129.
- [37] W. Horton, A. Hasegawa, Quasi-two-dimensional dynamics of plasmas and fluids, *Chaos* 4 (1994) 227–251.
- [38] J. G. Charney, On the scale of atmospheric motions, *Geophys. Public* 17 (1948) 3–17.
- [39] A. Hasegawa, K. Mima, Pseudo-three-dimensional turbulence in magnetised nonuniform plasma, *Phys. Fluids* 21 (1978) 87–92.
- [40] A. E. Gill, The stability of planetary waves on an infinite beta-plane, *Geophys. Fluid Dyn.* 6 (1974) 29–47.
- [41] V. E. Zakharov, L. Piterbarg, Canonical variables for Rossby waves and plasma drift waves, *Phys. Lett. A* 126 (8, 9) (1988) 497–500.
- [42] W. Dorland, G. W. Hammett, L. Chen, W. Park, S. C. Cowley, S. Hamaguchi, W. Horton, Numerical simulations of nonlinear 3-D ITG fluid turbulence with an improved Landau damping model, *Bull. Am. Phys. Soc.* 35 (1990) 2005.
- [43] A. Hasegawa, M. Wakatani, Plasma edge turbulence, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 50 (1983) 682–686. doi:10.1103/PhysRevLett.50.682. URL <http://link.aps.org/doi/10.1103/PhysRevLett.50.682>
- [44] J. C. McWilliams, *Fundamentals of Geophysical Fluid Dynamics*, Cambridge University Press, 2006.
- [45] S. Sukoriansky, A. Chekhlov, S. A. Orszag, B. Galperin, I. Staroselsky, Large eddy simulation of two-dimensional isotropic turbulence, *J. Sci. Computing* 11 (1) (1996) 13–45.
- [46] N. Vladimirova, S. Derevyanko, G. Falkovich, Phase transitions in wave turbulence, *Physical Review E* 85 (1) (2012) 010101.
- [47] A. C. Newell, The closure problem in a system of random gravity waves, *Rev. Geophys.* 6 (1) (1968) 131.
- [48] D. J. Benney, A. C. Newell, Random wave closures, *Stud. Appl. Math.* 48 (1) (1969) 29.
- [49] A. C. Newell, B. Rumpf, V. E. Zakharov, Spontaneous breaking of the spatial homogeneity symmetry in wave turbulence, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 108 (19) (2012) 194502.
- [50] Y. V. Lvov, S. Nazarenko, Noisy spectra, long correlations, and intermittency in wave turbulence, *Phys. Rev. E* 69 (6) (2004) 066608.
- [51] Y. Choi, Y. V. Lvov, S. Nazarenko, Probability densities and preservation of randomness in wave turbulence, *Phys. Lett. A* 332 (34) (2004) 230–238.
- [52] Y. Choi, Y. V. Lvov, S. Nazarenko, B. Pokorni, Anomalous probability of large amplitudes in wave turbulence, *Phys. Lett. A* 339 (35) (2005) 361–369.
- [53] C. M. Bender, S. A. Orszag, *Advanced Mathematical Methods for Scientists and Engineers*, Springer, 1999.
- [54] L.-Y. Chen, N. Goldenfeld, Y. Oono, Renormalization group and singular perturbations: Multiple scales, boundary layers, and reductive perturbation theory, *Phys. Rev. E* 54 (1) (1996) 376–394.
- [55] L. Biven, C. Connaughton, A. C. Newell, Structure functions and breakdown criteria for wave turbulence, *Physica D* 184 (1–4) (2003) 98–113.
- [56] C. Connaughton, A. Newell, S. Nazarenko, Dimensional analysis and wave turbulence, *Physica D* 184 (1–4) (2003) 86–97.
- [57] V. E. Zakharov, N. N. Filonenko, Energy spectrum for stochastic oscillations of the surface of a liquid, *Sov. Phys. Dokl.* 11 (1967) 881.
- [58] S. Dyachenko, A. Newell, A. Pushkarev, V. Zakharov, Optical turbulence: Weak turbulence, condensates and collapsing filaments in the nonlinear schrodinger equation, *Physica D* 57 (1992) 96–160.
- [59] E. A. Kuznetsov, Turbulence of ion sound in a plasma located in a magnetic field, *Sov. Phys. - JETP* 35 (1972) 310.
- [60] C. Connaughton, Numerical solutions of the isotropic 3-wave kinetic equation, *Physica D* 238 (23–24) (2009) 2282–2297.
- [61] A. S. Monin, L. I. Piterbarg, A kinetic equation for Rossby waves, *Sov. Phys. Dokl.* 32 (1987) 622–624.
- [62] E. N. Pelinovsky, Wave turbulence on a beta-plane, *Okeanologiya* 18 (2) (1978) 192–195.
- [63] A. B. Mikhailovskii, S. V. Novakovskii, V. P. Lakhin, S. V. Makurin, E. A. Novakovskaya, O. G. Onishchenko, Kolmogorov weak turbulence spectra of an inhomogeneous magnetized plasma, *Sov. Phys. JETP* 68 (1988) 1386–1392.
- [64] S. V. Novakovskii, A. B. Mikhailovskii, O. G. Onishchenko, On the theory of Kolmogorov spectra of drift wave turbulence, *Phys. Lett. A* 132 (1) (1988) 33–38.
- [65] A. Balk, S. V. Nazarenko, On the physical realizability of anisotropic Kolmogorov spectra of weak turbulence, *Sov. Phys. JETP* 70 (1990) 1031.
- [66] A. Balk, S. Nazarenko, V. Zakharov, On the structure of the Rossby/drift turbulence and zonal flows, in: *Proceedings of the International Symposium Generation of Large-Scale Structures in Continuous Media*, Perm-Moscow, USSR, 1990, pp. 34–35.
- [67] A. M. Balk, S. V. Nazarenko, V. E. Zakharov, New invariant for drift turbulence, *Phys. Lett. A* 152 (1991) 276–280.
- [68] P. Lynch, On resonant Rossby-Haurwitz triads, *Tellus A* 61 (3) (2009) 438445.
- [69] J. A. Armstrong, N. Bloembergen, J. Ducuing, P. S. Pershan, Interactions between Light Waves in a Nonlinear Dielectric, *Phys. Rev.* 127 (6)

- (1962) 1918–1939.
- [70] C. H. McComas, F. P. Bretherton, Resonant interaction of oceanic internal waves, *J. Geophys. Res.* 82 (1977) 1397–1412.
 - [71] R. Z. Sagdeev, A. A. Galeev, *Nonlinear Plasma Theory*, Benjamin, New York, 1969.
 - [72] J. Manley, H. Rowe, Some general properties of nonlinear elements-Part I. General energy relations, *Proc. IRE* 44 (7) (1956) 904–913.
 - [73] P. Lynch, Resonant rossby wave triads and the swinging spring., *Bull. Am. Met. Soc.* 84 (2003) 605–616.
 - [74] E. Kartashova, V. S. L'vov, Model of intraseasonal oscillations in Earth's atmosphere, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 98 (19) (2007) 198501.
 - [75] M. D. Bustamante, E. Kartashova, Effect of the dynamical phases on the nonlinear amplitudes' evolution, *Europhys. Lett.* 85 (3) (2009) 34002.
 - [76] E. Kartashova, Wave resonances in systems with discrete spectra, in: V. E. Zakharov (Ed.), *Nonlinear Waves and Weak Turbulence*, Vol. 182 of AMS Translations 2, American Mathematical Society, 1998, p. 95130.
 - [77] M. D. Bustamante, U. Hayat, Complete classification of discrete resonant Rossby/drift wave triads on periodic domains, *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Num. Sim.* 18 (9) (2013) 2402–2419.
 - [78] E. Kartashova, A. Kartashov, Laminated wave turbulence: Generic algorithms III, *Physica A* 380 (2007) 66–74.
 - [79] M. D. Bustamante, E. Kartashova, Dynamics of nonlinear resonances in hamiltonian systems, *EPL* 85 (1) (2009) 14004.
 - [80] V. S. Lvov, A. Pomyalov, I. Procaccia, O. Rudenko, Finite-dimensional turbulence of planetary waves, *Phys. Rev. E* 80 (6) (2009) 066319.
 - [81] A. I. Dyachenko, A. O. Korotkevich, V. E. Zakharov, Decay of the monochromatic capillary wave, *J. Exp. Theor. Phys. Lett.* 77 (2003) 477–481.
 - [82] C. P. Connaughton, B. T. Nadiga, S. V. Nazarenko, B. E. Quinn, Modulational instability of Rossby and drift waves and generation of zonal jets, *J. Fluid Mech.* 654 (2010) 207–231.
 - [83] J. Harris, C. Connaughton, M. D. Bustamante, Percolation transition in the kinematics of nonlinear resonance broadening in Charney-Hasegawa-Mima model of Rossby wave turbulence, *New J. Phys.* 15 (8) (2013) 083011.
 - [84] A. Pushkarev, On the Kolmogorov and frozen turbulence in numerical simulation of capillary waves, *Eur. J. Mech. B* 18 (3) (1999) 345–351.
 - [85] A. Pushkarev, V. Zakharov, Weak turbulence of capillary waves, *Physica D* 135 (2000) 98.
 - [86] C. Connaughton, S. Nazarenko, A. Pushkarev, Discreteness and quasis resonances in weak turbulence of capillary waves, *Phys. Rev. E* 63 (4) (2001) 046306.
 - [87] D. D. Holm, P. Lynch, Stepwise precession of the resonant swinging spring, *SIAM J. Appl. Dyn. Sys.* 1 (1) (2002) 44–64.
 - [88] J. Harris, M. D. Bustamante, C. Connaughton, Externally forced triads of resonantly interacting waves: Boundedness and integrability properties, *Commun. Nonlinear Sci. Num. Sim.* 17 (12) (2012) 49885006.
 - [89] A. D. D. Craik, *Wave Interactions and Fluid Flows*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1988.
 - [90] O. D. Gürçan, P. H. Diamond, T. S. Hahm, Nonlinear triad interactions and the mechanism of spreading in drift-wave turbulence, *Physical Review Letters* 97 (2) (2006) 024502.
 - [91] M. D. Bustamante, B. Quinn, D. Lucas, Robust Energy Transfer Mechanism via Precession Resonance in Nonlinear Turbulent Wave Systems, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 113 (8) (2014) 084502.
 - [92] P. H. Diamond, Y.-M. Liang, B. A. Carreras, P. W. Terry, Self-regulating shear flow turbulence: A paradigm for the L to H transition, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 72 (16) (1994) 2565–2568.
 - [93] M. A. Malkov, P. H. Diamond, M. N. Rosenbluth, On the nature of bursting in transport and turbulence in drift wave-zonal flow systems, *Phys. Plasmas* 8 (12) (2001) 5073–5076.
 - [94] H. Biglari, P. H. Diamond, P. W. Terry, Influence of sheared poloidal rotation on edge turbulence, *Phys. Fluids B* 2 (1) 1.
 - [95] O. D. Gürçan, Effect of sheared flow on the growth rate and turbulence decorrelation, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 109 (15) (2012) 155006.
 - [96] L. Biferale, Shell models of energy cascade in turbulence, *Ann. Rev. Fluid Mech.* 35 (1) (2003) 441–468.
 - [97] O. D. Gürçan, X. Garbet, P. Hennequin, P. H. Diamond, A. Casati, G. L. Falchetto, Wave-number spectrum of drift-wave turbulence, *Physical Review Letters* 102 (25) (2009) 255002.
 - [98] D. Y. Manin, S. V. Nazarenko, Nonlinear interaction of small-scale Rossby waves with an intense large-scale zonal flow, *Phys. Fluids* 6 (3) (1994) 1158–1167.
 - [99] A. I. Smolyakov, P. H. Diamond, V. I. Shevchenko, Zonal flow generation by parametric instability in magnetized plasmas and geostrophic fluids, *Phys. Plasmas* 7 (2000) 1349–1351.
 - [100] O. Onishchenko, O. Pokhotelov, R. Sagdeev, P. Shukla, L. Stenflo, Generation of zonal flows by Rossby waves in the atmosphere, *Nonlin. Proc. Geophys.* 11 (2004) 241–244.
 - [101] S. Champeaux, P. H. Diamond, Streamer and zonal flow generation from envelope modulations in drift wave turbulence, *Phys. Lett. A* 288 (2001) 214.
 - [102] S. Gallagher, B. Hnat, C. Connaughton, S. Nazarenko, G. Rowlands, The modulational instability in the extended Hasegawa-Mima equation with a finite Larmor radius, *Phys. Plasmas* 19 (2012) 122115.
 - [103] E. N. Lorentz, Barotropic instability of Rossby wave motion, *J. Atmo. Sci.* 29 (1972) 258–269.
 - [104] V. I. Arnold, L. D. Meshalkin, Seminar led by A. N. Kolmogorov on selected problems of analysis (1958–1959), *Usp. Mat. Nauk* 15 (1960) 247.
 - [105] L. D. Meshalkin, Y. G. Sinai, Investigation of the stability of a stationary solution of a system of equations for the plane movement of an incompressible viscous liquid, *J. Appl. Math. Mech.* 25 (1962) 1700–1705.
 - [106] A. Okuno, A. Masuda, Effect of horizontal divergence on the geostrophic turbulence on a beta-plane: Suppression of the Rhines effect, *Phys. Fluids* 15 (1) (2003) 56–65.
 - [107] K. Srinivasan, W. R. Young, Zonostrophic instability, *J. Atm. Sci.* 69 (5) (2012) 1633–1656.
 - [108] J. B. Parker, J. A. Krommes, Zonal flow as pattern formation, *Phys. Plasmas* 20 (10) (2013) 100703.
 - [109] J. B. Parker, J. A. Krommes, Zonal flow as pattern formation, in: B. Galperin, P. Read (Eds.), *Zonal Jets*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2014, p. xxx (to appear).
 - [110] A. C. Mahanti, The oscillation between Rossby wave and zonal flow in a barotropic fluid, *Arch. Met. Geoph. Biokl., Ser. A* 30 (1981) 211–225.

- [111] B. Galperin, J. Hoemann, S. Espa, G. Di Nitto, Anisotropic turbulence and Rossby waves in an easterly jet: An experimental study, *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 41 (2014) 6237–6243.
- [112] L. Rayleigh, On the stability of the laminar motion of an inviscid fluid, *Phil. Mag.* 26 (1913) 1001–1010.
- [113] H. L. Kuo, Dynamic instability of two-dimensional nondivergent flow in a barotropic atmosphere, *J. Meteor.* 6 (1949) 105–122.
- [114] E. Hovmöller, The Trough-and-Ridge diagram, *Tellus* 1 (2) (1949) 62–66.
- [115] A. Sánchez-Lavega, T. del Río-Gaztelurrutia, R. Hueso, S. Pérez-Hoyos, E. García-Melendo, A. Antuñaño, I. Mendikoa, J. F. Rojas, J. Lillo, D. Barrado-Navascués, J. M. Gomez-Forrellad, C. Go, D. Peach, T. Barry, D. P. Milika, P. Nicholas, A. Wesley, The long-term steady motion of Saturn’s hexagon and the stability of its enclosed jet stream under seasonal changes, *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 41 (2014) 1425–1431.
- [116] B. E. Quinn, S. V. Nazarenko, C. Connaughton, S. Gallagher, B. Hnat, Modulational instability in basic plasma and geophysical models, in: B. Galperin, P. Read (Eds.), *Zonal Jets*, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2014, p. xxx (to appear).
- [117] G. Boffetta, R. E. Ecke, Two-Dimensional Turbulence, *Annu. Rev. Fluid Mech.* 44 (1) (2012) 427–451.
- [118] G. Falkovich, A. Shafarenko, Non-stationary wave turbulence, *J. Nonlin. Sci.* 1 (1991) 457–480.
- [119] C. Connaughton, P. Krapivsky, Aggregation-fragmentation processes and decaying three-wave turbulence, *Phys. Rev. E* 81 (2010) 035303(R).
- [120] P. Rhines, Waves and turbulence on a beta-plane, *J. Fluid Mech.* 69 (1975) 417–443.
- [121] A. C. Newell, V. E. Zakharov, The role of the generalized Phillips’ spectrum in wave turbulence, *Phys. Lett. A* 372 (23) (2008) 4230–4233.
- [122] O. M. Phillips, The equilibrium range in the spectrum of wind-generated waves, *J. Fluid Mech.* 4 (04) (1958) 426–434.
- [123] S. V. Nazarenko, A. A. Schekochihin, Critical balance in magnetohydrodynamic, rotating and stratified turbulence: towards a universal scaling conjecture, *J. Fluid Mech.* 677 (2011) 134–153.
- [124] G. K. Vallis, M. E. Maltrud, Generation of Mean Flows and Jets on a Beta Plane and over Topography, *J. Phys. Oceanogr.* 23 (7) (1993) 1346–1362.
- [125] S. Sukoriansky, N. Dikovskaya, B. Galperin, On the Arrest of Inverse Energy Cascade and the Rhines Scale, *J. Atm. Sci.* 64 (9) (2007) 3312–3327.
- [126] A. Chekhlov, S. A. Orszag, S. Sukoriansky, B. Galperin, I. Staroselsky, The effect of small-scale forcing on large-scale structures in two-dimensional flows, *Physica D* 98 (24) (1996) 321–334.
- [127] H.-P. Huang, B. Galperin, S. Sukoriansky, Anisotropic spectra in two-dimensional turbulence on the surface of a rotating sphere, *Phys. Fluids* 13 (1) (2001) 225–240.
- [128] B. Galperin, S. Sukoriansky, H.-P. Huang, Universal n^{-5} spectrum of zonal flows on giant planets, *Phys. Fluids* 13 (6) (2001) 1545–1548.
- [129] S. Sukoriansky, B. Galperin, N. Dikovskaya, Universal Spectrum of Two-Dimensional Turbulence on a Rotating Sphere and Some Basic Features of Atmospheric Circulation on Giant Planets, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 89 (12) (2002) 124501.
- [130] V. S. L’Vov, S. Nazarenko, Discrete and mesoscopic regimes of finite-size wave turbulence, *Phys. Rev. E* 82 (2010) 056322–1.
- [131] E. Kartashova, M. D. Bustamante, Resonance clustering in wave turbulent regimes: Integrable dynamics, *Comm. Comp. Phys.* 10 (19) (2011) 1211–1240.
- [132] V. E. Zakharov, A. O. Korotkevich, A. N. Pushkarev, A. I. Dyachenko, Mesoscopic wave turbulence, *JETP Letters* 82 (2005) 487–491.
- [133] S. V. Nazarenko, Sandpile behavior in discrete water-wave turbulence, *J. Stat. Mech. Theor. Exp.* (2006) L02002.
- [134] A. M. Balk, A new invariant for Rossby wave systems, *Phys. Lett. A* 155 (1991) 20–24.
- [135] A. M. Balk, Conservation style of the extra invariant for Rossby waves, *Physica D* 223 (2006) 109–120.
- [136] V. E. Zakharov, L. Piterbarg, Canonical variables for Rossby waves and plasma drift waves, *Phys. Lett. A* 126 (8, 9) (1988) 497–500.
- [137] M. Longuet-Higgins, A. Gill, K. Kenyon, Resonant interactions between planetary waves [and discussion], *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London. Series A. Mathematical and Physical Sciences* 299 (1456) (1967) 120–144.
- [138] S. V. Nazarenko, B. E. Quinn, Triple cascade behaviour in QG and drift turbulence and the generation of zonal jets, *Physical Review Letters* 203 (2009) 118501.
- [139] A. M. Balk, T. Yoshikawa, The Rossby wave extra invariant in the physical space, *Physica D* 238 (2009) 384–394.
- [140] I. Saito, K. Ishioka, Angular distribution of energy spectrum in two-dimensional β -plane turbulence in the long-wave limit, *Phys. Fluids* 25 (7) (2013) 076602.
- [141] C. Connaughton, S. V. Nazarenko, B. Quinn, Nonlocal wave turbulence in the Charney-Hasegawa-Mima equation: a short review, *arXiv:1012.2714 [nlin.CD]*.
- [142] C. P. Connaughton, S. V. Nazarenko, B. E. Quinn, Feedback of zonal flows on wave turbulence driven by small-scale instability in the Charney-Hasegawa-Mima model, *Europhys. Lett.* 96 (2011) 25001.
- [143] A. I. Dyachenko, S. V. Nazarenko, V. Zakharov, Wave-vortex dynamics in drift and beta-plane turbulence, *Phys. Lett. A* 165 (1992) 330–334.
- [144] S. V. Nazarenko, A. C. Newell, S. Galtier, Non-local MHD turbulence, *Physica D* 152–153 (2001) 646–652.
- [145] W. Horton, Statistical properties and correlation functions for drift waves, *Phys. Fluids* 29 (1986) 1491–1503.
- [146] J. F. Drake, P. N. Guzdar, A. B. Hassam, J. D. Huba, Nonlinear mode coupling theory of the lower-hybrid-drift instability, *Phys. Fluids* 27 (1984) 1148–1159.
- [147] G. Hammett, The ion temperature gradient (ITG) instability, from a lecture at CMPD/CMSO Winter School, UCLA (sept 2007).
- [148] B. Galperin, S. Sukoriansky, H.-P. Huang, Universal n^{-5} spectrum of zonal flows on giant planets, *Phys. Fluids* 13 (2001) 1545–1548.
- [149] S. Gama, U. Frisch, H. Scholl, The two-dimensional Navier-Stokes equations with a large-scale instability of the Kuramoto-Sivashinsky type: Numerical exploration on the Connection Machine, *J. Sci. Comp.* 6 (4) (1991) 425–452.
- [150] R. Numata, R. Ball, R. L. Dewar, Bifurcation in electrostatic resistive drift wave turbulence, *Phys. Plasmas* 14 (2007) 102312.
- [151] A. V. Pushkarev, W. J. Bos, S. V. Nazarenko, Zonal flow generation and its feedback on turbulence production in drift wave turbulence, *Physics of Plasmas* 20 (2013) 042304.
- [152] A. M. Dimits, G. Bateman, M. A. Beer, B. I. Cohen, W. Dorland, G. W. Hammett, C. Kim, J. E. Kinsey, M. Kotschenreuther, A. H. Kritiz, L. L. Lao, J. Mandrekas, W. M. Nevins, S. E. Parker, A. J. Redd, D. E. Shumaker, R. Sydora, J. Weiland, Comparisons and physics basis of tokamak transport models and turbulence simulations, *Phys. Plasmas* 7 (3) (2000) 969–983.
- [153] O. T. Kingsbury, R. E. Waltz, Numerical simulation of drift waves and trapped ion modes, *Phys. Plasmas* 1 (1994) 2319–2328.

- [154] K. H. Burrell, P. Gohil, D. H. Groebner, R. J. and Kaplan, J. I. Robinson, W. M. Solomon, Improved charge-coupled device detectors for high-speed, charge exchange spectroscopy studies on the DIII-D tokamak, *Rev. Sci. Instrum* 75 (2004) 3455–3458.
- [155] K. Crombé, et al., Poloidal rotation velocity in jet advanced mode plasmas using charge exchange recombination spectroscopy, in: 33rd EPS Conference on Plasma Physics, Rome, 19–23 June 2006, ECA, 2006.
- [156] T. Smith, Change of variables in Laplace’s and other second-order differential equations, *Proc. Phys. Soc.* 34 (1934) 344 – 349.

Figure 26. Small-scale Rossby waves in the region $1 \leq k_x \leq 100$, $-100 \leq k_y \leq 100$.

 Figure 27. The level sets of (a) $\Omega_{\mathbf{k}}$ and (b) $Z_{\mathbf{k}}$.

 Figure 28. Zonal flow velocity U as a function of the instability growth rate γ

 Figure 29. Evolution of the energy contained in the forcing mode, zonal and meridional sectors for narrowband forcing in the CHM for $\chi = 3.75 \times 10^{-4}$. The inset shows the saturated value of the ZF as a function of β . The horizontal and the inclined dashed lines are the theoretical predictions arising from Eq. (199) and Eq. (221) for the weak and strong turbulence cases respectively.

Figure 30. Evolution of the energy spectrum out of a random seed in the 2D $\mathbf{k}$ -space for narrowband forcing.

Figure 31. Graphical representation for $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}} = \gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^+ - \nu_2 k^4$ with $\gamma_{\mathbf{k}}^+$ defined by Eq. (223) with $V = 0.01$, $F = 7000$ and $\nu_2 = 2. \times 10^{-9}$. The outermost contour is $\gamma = 0$.

Figure 32. The evolution of the energy contained in the forcing, zonal and meridional sectors for broadband forcing for (a) $\chi = 9.62 \times 10^{-7}$, (b) $\chi = 9.62 \times 10^{-4}$ and (c) $\chi = 9.62 \times 10^{-2}$.

Figure 33. The 2D energy spectrum for $\chi = 2.5 \times 10^{-5}$ at times (a) 38.6, (b) 39.2 and (c) 70 normalised by the maximum energy 0.25, 0.25 and 5 respectively.

Figure 34. A sequence of vorticity snapshots for a weakly nonlinear case $\chi = 2.5 \times 10^{-5}$.

Figure 35. A sequence of vorticity plots for a strongly nonlinear case $\chi = 25$.

Figure 36. The 1D averaged spectra for the weakly nonlinear case. Both plots are for the same data but RHS is a log-log plot.